

*Cadillac*

**ATS**

Owner Manual

# 2014 Cadillac ATS Owner Manual

<b>In Brief</b> .....	1-1	<b>Storage</b> .....	4-1	<b>Climate Controls</b> .....	8-1
Instrument Panel .....	1-2	Storage Compartments .....	4-1	Climate Control Systems .....	8-1
Initial Drive Information .....	1-4	Additional Storage Features ...	4-3	Air Vents .....	8-6
Vehicle Features .....	1-13	Roof Rack System .....	4-3	Maintenance .....	8-7
Performance and Maintenance .....	1-16	<b>Instruments and Controls</b> ....	5-1	<b>Driving and Operating</b> .....	9-1
<b>Keys, Doors, and Windows</b> .....	2-1	Controls .....	5-2	Driving Information .....	9-2
Keys and Locks .....	2-1	Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators .....	5-7	Starting and Operating .....	9-14
Doors .....	2-12	Information Displays .....	5-24	Engine Exhaust .....	9-21
Vehicle Security .....	2-14	Vehicle Messages .....	5-30	Automatic Transmission .....	9-22
Exterior Mirrors .....	2-18	Vehicle Personalisation .....	5-41	Manual Gearbox .....	9-26
Interior Mirrors .....	2-20	<b>Lighting</b> .....	6-1	Drive Systems .....	9-27
Windows .....	2-20	Exterior Lighting .....	6-1	Brakes .....	9-27
Roof .....	2-23	Interior Lighting .....	6-7	Ride Control Systems .....	9-31
<b>Seats and Restraints</b> .....	3-1	Lighting Features .....	6-9	Cruise Control .....	9-35
Head Restraints .....	3-2	<b>Infotainment System</b> .....	7-1	Driver Assistance Systems ...	9-46
Front Seats .....	3-3	Introduction .....	7-1	Fuel .....	9-60
Rear Seats .....	3-9			Trailer Towing .....	9-63
Safety Belts .....	3-11			Conversions and Add-Ons ...	9-63
Airbag System .....	3-19				
Child Restraints .....	3-32				
Pedestrian Protection System .....	3-47				

# 2014 Cadillac ATS Owner Manual

---

<b>Vehicle Care</b> .....	10-1	<b>Customer Information</b> .....	13-1
General Information .....	10-2	Customer Information .....	13-1
Vehicle Checks .....	10-3	Vehicle Data Recording and	
Headlamp Aiming .....	10-25	Privacy .....	13-1
Bulb Replacement .....	10-25	<b>Index</b> .....	i-1
Electrical System .....	10-27		
Wheels and Tyres .....	10-36		
Jump Starting .....	10-53		
Towing the Vehicle .....	10-56		
Appearance Care .....	10-59		
<b>Service and Maintenance</b> ...	11-1		
General Information .....	11-1		
Scheduled Maintenance .....	11-1		
Recommended Fluids,			
Lubricants, and Parts .....	11-5		
<b>Technical Data</b> .....	12-1		
Vehicle Identification .....	12-1		
Vehicle Data .....	12-2		



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, the CADILLAC Crest and Wreath, and CADILLAC ATS are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual. Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

## Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

## Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

### **Danger**

Text marked  **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### **Warning**

Text marked  **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

### **Caution**

Text marked  **Caution** provides information that may indicate a hazard that could result in injury or death. It could also result in possible damage to the vehicle.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

## iv Introduction

---

### Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

 : This symbol is shown when you need to see your owner manual for additional instructions or information.

 : This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

### Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

 : Airbag Readiness Light

 : Air Conditioning

 : Air Conditioning  
Refrigerant Oil

 : Antilock Brake System (ABS)

 : Audio Steering Wheel Controls

 : Brake System Warning Light

 : Certified Technician

 : Charging System

 : Cruise Control

 : Engine Coolant Temperature

 : Exterior Lamps

 : Flammable

 : Fuel Gauge

 : Fuses

 : Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam  
Changer

 : Heated Steering Wheel

 : LATCH System Child  
Restraints

 : Malfunction Indicator Lamp

 : Oil Pressure

 : Power

 : Remote Vehicle Start

 : Safety Belt Reminders

 : Tyre Pressure Monitor

 : Traction Control/StabiliTrak®

 : Windscreen Washer Fluid

## In Brief

### Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview .... 1-2

### Initial Drive Information

Initial Drive Information ..... 1-4

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)

System ..... 1-4

Remote Vehicle Start ..... 1-5

Door Locks ..... 1-5

Boot ..... 1-6

Windows ..... 1-6

Seat Adjustment ..... 1-7

Memory Features ..... 1-8

Second Row Seats ..... 1-8

Heated Seats ..... 1-8

Head Restraint Adjustment .... 1-9

Safety Belts ..... 1-9

Mirror Adjustment ..... 1-9

Steering Wheel

Adjustment ..... 1-10

Interior Lighting ..... 1-10

Exterior Lighting ..... 1-11

Windscreen Wiper/Washer ... 1-11

Climate Controls ..... 1-12

Transmission ..... 1-13

### Vehicle Features

Steering Wheel Controls ..... 1-13

Cruise Control ..... 1-13

Infotainment System ..... 1-14

Driver Information

Centre (DIC) ..... 1-14

Forward Collision Alert (FCA)

System ..... 1-15

Lane Departure

Warning (LDW) ..... 1-15

Side Blind Zone

Alert (SBZA) ..... 1-15

Rear Vision

Camera (RVC) ..... 1-15

Ultrasonic Parking Assist .... 1-15

Active Emergency Braking

System ..... 1-16

Power Outlets ..... 1-16

### Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/Electronic

Stability Control ..... 1-16

Tyre Pressure Monitor ..... 1-17

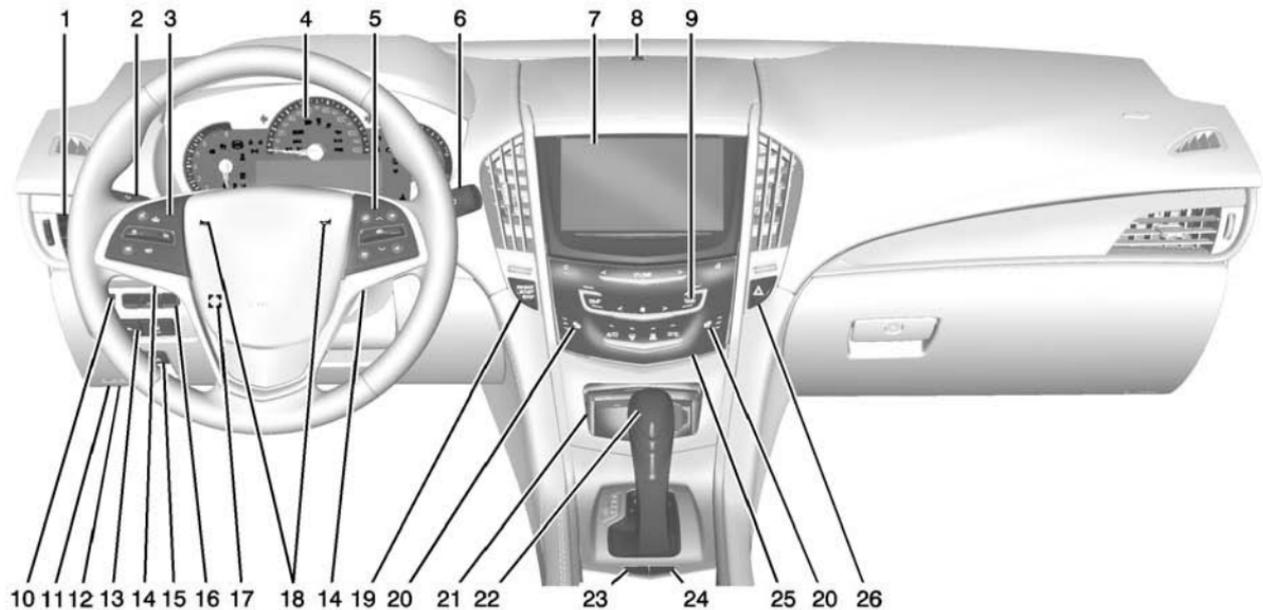
Engine Oil Life System ..... 1-17

Driving for Better Fuel

Economy ..... 1-17

## Instrument Panel

### Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Air Vents on page 8-6.*
2. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1.*

Indicator Lever. See *Indicator and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-6.*
3. *Cruise Control on page 9-35.*

*Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-38 (If Equipped).*

*Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-51 (If Equipped).*

*Heated Steering Wheel on page 5-2.*

*Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2.*
4. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8.*

Driver Information Centre (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24.*
5. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2.*
6. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3.*
7. *Infotainment on page 7-1.*
8. *Light Sensor. See Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-4.*
9. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1.*
10. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-7.*
11. *Bonnet Release (Out of View). See Bonnet on page 10-3.*
12. *Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14.*
13. *Parking Assist Button. See Driver Assistance Systems on page 9-46.*

*Lane Departure Warning (LDW) on page 9-57.*
14. *Tap Shift Controls (If Equipped). See Manual Mode on page 9-24.*
15. *Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Automatic Transmission). See Parking Brake (Manual) on page 9-28 or Parking Brake (Electric) on page 9-29.*
16. *Head-Up Display (HUD) on page 5-27 (If Equipped).*
17. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2.*
18. *Horn on page 5-3.*
19. *ENGINE START/STOP Button. See Ignition Positions on page 9-15.*
20. *Heated Front Seats on page 3-8 (If Equipped).*
21. *Storage Bin. See Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1.*
22. *Shift Lever. See Automatic Transmission on page 9-22 or Manual Gearbox on page 9-26 (If Equipped).*

## 1-4 In Brief

23. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-31.*  
Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Manual Gearbox). See *Parking Brake (Manual) on page 9-28* or *Parking Brake (Electric) on page 9-29.*
24. *MODE Button. See Driver Mode Control on page 9-34.*
25. *Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1.*
26. *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-6.*

### Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

### Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter may be used to lock and unlock the doors from up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

 : Press to lock all doors.

 : Press to unlock the driver door or all doors, depending on the vehicle personalisation settings.

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41.*

 : Press and release once to initiate vehicle locator.

Press and hold  for three seconds to sound the panic alarm.

Press  again or start the vehicle to cancel the panic alarm.

 HOLD : Press and hold to release the boot.



Press the key release button near the bottom of the transmitter to remove the key. The key can be used for the driver door and the glove box.

See *Keys* on page 2-1 and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped with this feature, the engine can be started from outside of the vehicle.

### Starting the Vehicle

1. Press and release  on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold  for at least four seconds or until the indicator lamps flash.
3. Press the brake pedal and select the ON/RUN/START ignition mode to drive the vehicle.

### Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.

- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* on page 2-7.

## Door Locks

To lock or unlock a door manually:

- From the outside, if the vehicle is equipped with keyless access, press the button on the door handle when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within range. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2.
- Use the key in the front driver door. The key cylinder is covered by a cap. See *Door Locks* on page 2-8.
- From the inside, to lock a rear door push down on the door lock knob on top of the door. To unlock a door, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and again to open it.

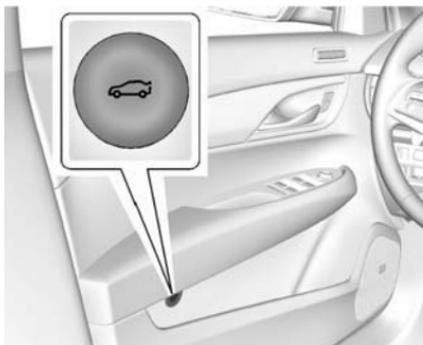
## Power Door Locks

From the outside, press  or  on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2.



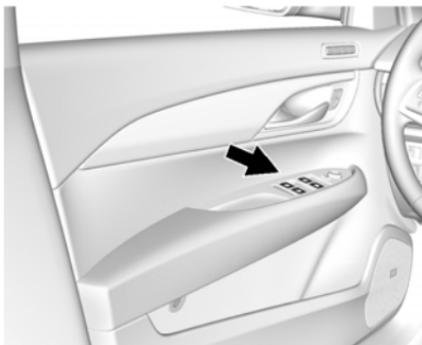
From the inside, press  or . The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated. See *Power Door Locks* on page 2-11.

### Boot



To open the boot, press  from inside the vehicle or press  on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or push the touch pad on the rear of the boot above the number plate. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2 and *Boot* on page 2-12.

### Windows



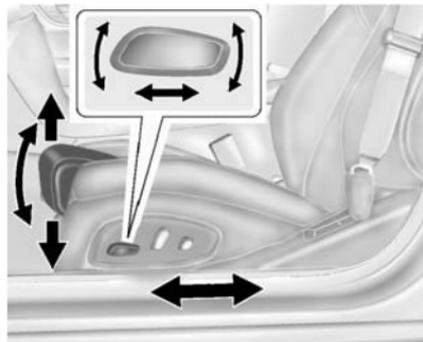
The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 9-19.

The power window switches on the driver door control all the windows. Each passenger door has a switch that controls only that window.

Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it. See *Power Windows* on page 2-21.

## Seat Adjustment

### Power Seats

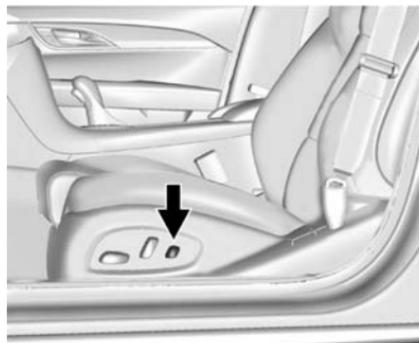


To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If available, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* on page 3-3.

### Lumbar Adjustment

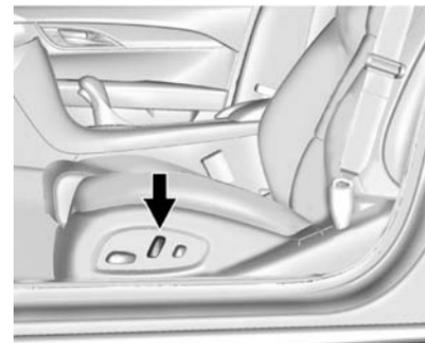


To adjust the lumbar and bolster support:

- Press and hold the control forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the control up or down to increase or decrease seatback bolster support, if available.

See *Lumbar Adjustment* on page 3-4.

### Reclining Seat Backrests



To adjust the seat back:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

See *Reclining Seat backrests* on page 3-5.

### Memory Features



If equipped, the "1," "2," SET, and  (Exit) buttons on the driver door are used to manually save and recall memory settings for the driver seat and outside mirrors.

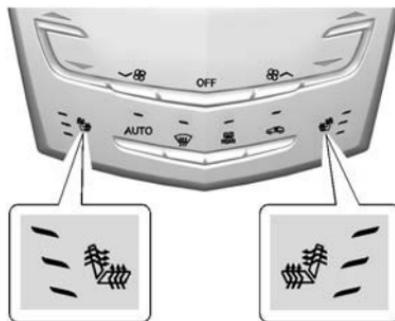
See *Memory Seats* on page 3-6 and *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

### Second Row Seats

The rear seatbacks can be folded down to increase cargo space.

See *Rear Seats* on page 3-9.

### Heated Seats



#### Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar

If available, the buttons are near the climate controls on the centre stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press   or   to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

See *Heated Front Seats* on page 3-8.

## Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints* on page 3-2 and *Power Seat Adjustment* on page 3-3.

## Safety Belts



Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly:

- *Safety Belts* on page 3-11.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* on page 3-12.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt* on page 3-13.
- *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-42

## Mirror Adjustment

### Exterior Mirrors



1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

The vehicle has power folding mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* on page 2-19.

### Interior Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

This vehicle has an automatic dimming rearview mirror. The mirror will automatically reduce the glare from the headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* on page 2-20.

### Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

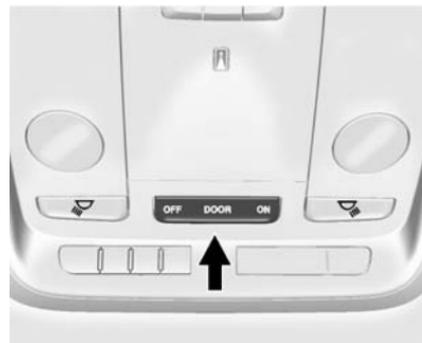
1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

### Interior Lighting

#### Dome Lamp

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

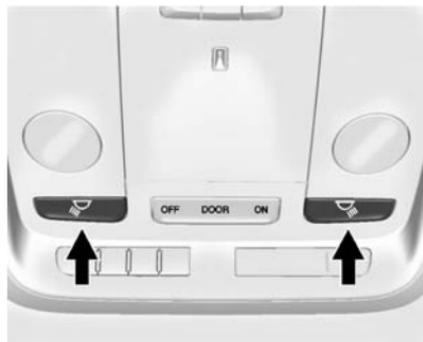
**OFF:** Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

**DOOR:** The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

**ON:** Turns the lamp on.

## Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps on the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened. To manually turn the reading lamps on or off:

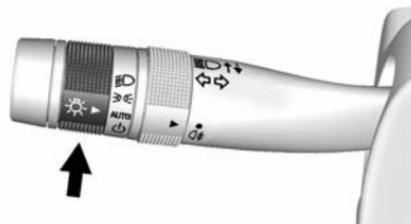


Press  or  next to each overhead console reading lamp.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

For more information on interior lighting, see *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* on page 6-7.

## Exterior Lighting



The exterior lamp control is on the indicator lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

 : Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to  again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

**AUTO:** Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

 : Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

 : Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* on page 6-1 and *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)* on page 6-4.

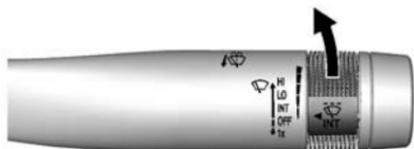
## Windscreen Wiper/Washer



With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the stalk to select the wiper speed.

**HI:** Use for fast wipes.

**LO:** Use for slow wipes.



**INT:** Move the lever up to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

**OFF:** Use to turn the wipers off.

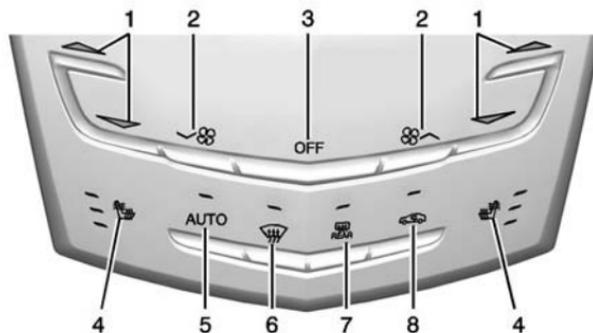
**1X :** For a single wipe, briefly move the stalk down. For several wipes, hold the stalk down.

↓  : Pull the stalk toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer* on page 5-3.

## Climate Controls

This system controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. OFF (Fan)
4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)

5. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
6. Defrost
7. Rear Window Demister
8. Recirculation

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* on page 8-1.

## Transmission

### Automatic Transmission

#### Driver Shift Control (DSC) or Tap Shift

Vehicles equipped with DSC allow shifting an automatic transmission similar to a manual gearbox. DSC can be enabled through the shift lever, or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel (if equipped). See *Manual Mode on page 9-24*.

## Vehicle Features

### Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.

## Cruise Control



 : Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

## 1-14 In Brief

**+RES:** Press the control up briefly to resume to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

**SET-:** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET- down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET- down to the second detent.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

See *Cruise Control* on page 9-35 or *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-38 (if equipped).

### Infotainment System

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings and downloadable applications (if equipped).

### Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The DIC display is in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.



**^ or v** : Press to move up or down in a list.

**< or >** : Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press **<** to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL:** Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-24.

## Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, FCA may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a green indicator when a vehicle is detected directly ahead. This indicator displays amber if you follow a vehicle much too closely. It also provides a flashing red alert on the windscreen and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat, when approaching a vehicle too quickly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-51.

## Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW is intended to help avoid unintentional lane departures at speeds of 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater. LDW uses a camera sensor to detect the lane markings. The LDW indicator, , appears green if a lane marking is detected. If the

vehicle departs the lane, the indicator will change to amber and flash. In addition, beeps will sound, or the driver seat will pulse.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* on page 9-57.

## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, SBZA will detect vehicles in the next lane over in the vehicle's side blind zone area. When this happens, the SBZA display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* on page 9-56.

## Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

If equipped, RVC displays a view of the area behind the vehicle, on the centre stack display, when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse).

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* on page 9-47.

## Ultrasonic Parking Assist

If equipped, Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). URPA may display a warning triangle on the Rear Vision Camera screen and a graphic on the instrument cluster to provide the object distance. In addition, multiple beeps or seat pulses may occur if very close to an object.

The vehicle may also have the Front Parking Assist system, a higher speed Backing Warning System, and the Rear Automatic Braking system.

See *Driver Assistance Systems* on page 9-46.

## Active Emergency Braking System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the Active Emergency Braking System, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) and the Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System. These systems can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle to help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes.

See *Active Emergency Braking System* on page 9-54.

## Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the front storage bin below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the centre floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

See *Power Outlets* on page 5-5.

## Performance and Maintenance

### Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

The StabiliTrak system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release  on the centre console.  illuminates in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages* on page 5-37.
- Press and release  again to turn traction control back on.

- To turn off both Traction Control and StabiliTrak, press and hold  until  and  illuminate in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-37*.
- Press and release  again to turn on both systems.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-31*.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).



The low tyre pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tyres. If the warning light comes on,

stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*. The warning light will remain on until the tyre pressure is corrected.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the tyre pressures are getting low and the tyres need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tyre maintenance. Maintain the correct tyre pressures.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-41*.

## Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter.

The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

### Resetting the Oil Life System

After you change the oil, the oil life system will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-8*.

## Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.

## 1-18 In Brief

---

- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tyres properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tyres with the same TPC Spec number moulded into the tyre's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

# Keys, Doors, and Windows

## Keys and Locks

- Keys ..... 2-1
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ..... 2-2
- Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation ..... 2-2
- Remote Vehicle Start ..... 2-7
- Door Locks ..... 2-8
- Power Door Locks ..... 2-11
- Delayed Locking ..... 2-11
- Lockout Protection ..... 2-11
- Safety Locks ..... 2-12

## Doors

- Boot ..... 2-12

## Vehicle Security

- Vehicle Security ..... 2-14
- Vehicle Alarm System ..... 2-14
- Anti-theft Locking System ..... 2-16
- Immobiliser ..... 2-17
- Immobiliser Operation ..... 2-17

## Exterior Mirrors

- Convex Mirrors ..... 2-18
- Power Mirrors ..... 2-19
- Folding Mirrors ..... 2-19
- Heated Mirrors ..... 2-20

## Interior Mirrors

- Interior Rearview Mirrors ..... 2-20
- Manual Rearview Mirror ..... 2-20
- Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror ..... 2-20

## Windows

- Windows ..... 2-20
- Power Windows ..... 2-21
- Sun Visors ..... 2-23

## Roof

- Sunroof ..... 2-23

# Keys and Locks

## Keys

 **Warning**

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.

## 2-2 Keys, Doors, and Windows



This key, inside the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, is used for the driver door and glove box.



To remove the key, press the button near the bottom of the transmitter, and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

### Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

### Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The RKE transmitter functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.



**With Remote Start and Remote Boot Release Shown, Without Similar**

**🔒 (Lock):** Press to lock all doors. The indicator lamp indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate locking. See “Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

If the driver door is open when 🔒 is pressed and “Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out” is enabled through the vehicle personalisation, all doors will lock and then the driver door will

immediately unlock. See “Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*. If the passenger door is open when 🔒 is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing 🔒 may also arm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-14*.

When the doors are locked, the fuel door is also locked.

**🔓 (Unlock):** Press to unlock the driver door or all doors. When remotely unlocking the vehicle at night, the headlamps and reversing lamps will come on for about 30 seconds to light your approach to the vehicle. The indicators may flash to indicate unlocking. Memory seat positions may be recalled when unlocking the vehicle. See *Memory Seats on page 3-6*.

See “Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

Pressing 🔒 will disarm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-14*.

When the doors are unlocked, the fuel door is unlocked.

**🌀 (Remote Start):** If equipped, press and release 🔒 and then immediately press and hold 🌀 for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7*.

**📡 (Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm):** Press and release once to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold 📡 for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the indicators flash for 30 seconds, or until 📡 is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

**🚗 HOLD (Remote Boot Release):** Press and hold open the boot.

## 2-4 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---

### Keyless Access Operation

Some vehicles have the Keyless Access system that lets you lock and unlock the doors and access the boot without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the door being opened. If the vehicle has this feature, there will be a button on the outside door handles.

The Keyless Access system can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

### Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.



**Driver Door Shown, Passenger Similar**

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

### Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

### Passive Locking

If equipped with Keyless Access, this feature will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed, if the vehicle is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed from the interior or none remain in the interior.

If equipped with a locking fuel filler flap, the flap will also lock at this time.

### Temporary Disable Passive Locking Feature

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding  on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until  on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is switched on.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

### Keyless Boot Opening

Press the touch pad on the boot handle to open the boot if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft).

### Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a

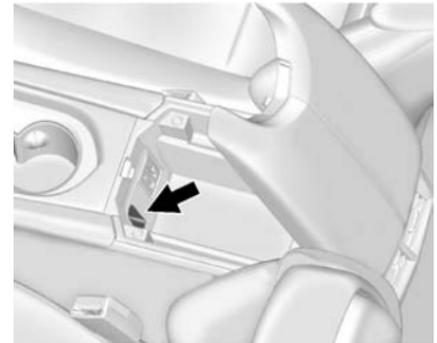
replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it. See your dealer to program transmitters to this vehicle.

### Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak or if there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display No Remote Detected or No remote key was detected. Place key in transmitter pocket. Then start your vehicle. when you try to start the vehicle. See *Key and Lock Messages* on page 5-34.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the centre console storage area and the storage tray.



2. Place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket.
3. With the vehicle in P (Park) , N (Neutral) or Neutral, press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/STOP button.

Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

## 2-6 Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Battery Replacement

#### Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

#### Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

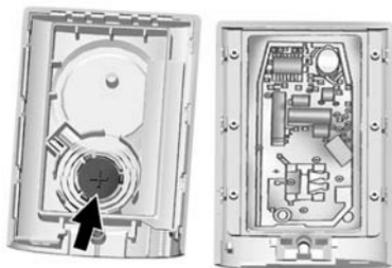
Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.



1. Press the button near the bottom of the transmitter and pull the key out.



2. Use the oval base of the key blade to separate the two halves of the transmitter.



3. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
4. Insert the new battery on the back housing, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Align the key release button and snap the transmitter back together.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

**Ⓚ (Remote Vehicle Start):** This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear window demister may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear demist indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If the vehicle has heated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Front Seats* on page 3-8.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

The RKE transmitter range may be less while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* on page 2-2.

## Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press and release **Ⓚ** on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold **Ⓚ** for at least four seconds or until the indicator lamps flash. This confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received. If the vehicle's lamps are not visible, press and hold **Ⓚ** for at least four seconds.

During the remote start, the doors will be locked and the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.

## 2-8 Keys, Doors, and Windows

The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done or the ignition is put in ON/RUN/START.

3. Press the brake pedal and select the ON/RUN/START ignition mode to drive the vehicle.

### Extending Engine Run Time

The engine run time can also be extended by another 10 minutes, if during the first 10 minutes Steps 1–2 are repeated while the engine is still running. This provides a total of 20 minutes.

The remote start can only be extended once.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a remote start with an extension, are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be changed to ON/RUN/START and then back to OFF before the remote start procedure can be used again.

### Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold  until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the vehicle on and then back off.

### Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is in any mode other than OFF.
- The transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.

- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

## Door Locks



### Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

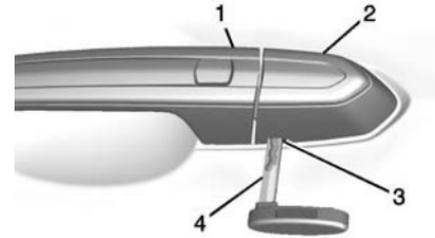
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when slowing or stopping the vehicle. Lock the doors to help prevent this from happening.

**Keyless Access**



If equipped, use the Keyless Access system to lock and unlock the door. When the doors are locked and the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door handle, press the lock/unlock button. When unlocking from the driver door, the first press unlocks that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2.

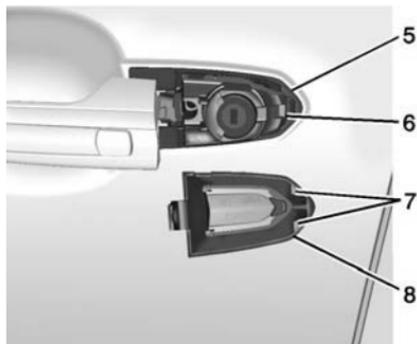
**Key Cylinder Access**



To access the key cylinder:

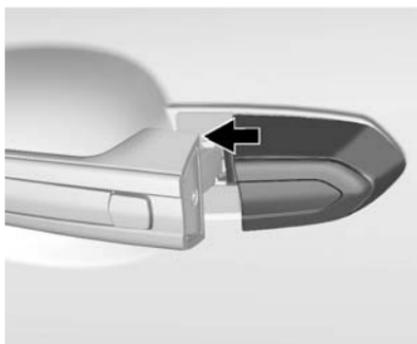
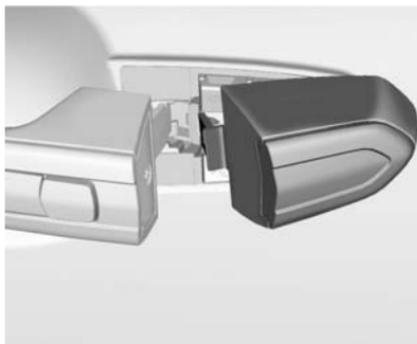
1. Pull the door handle (1) to the open position.
2. Insert the key (4) into the slot (3) on the bottom of the cap (2) and pry outward.
3. Move the cap (2) rearward and remove.
4. Use the key (4) in the cylinder.

## 2-10 Keys, Doors, and Windows



To replace the cap:

1. Pull the door handle to the open position.
2. Insert the two tabs (7) at the back of the cap (8) between the seal (5) and the metal base (6).



3. Move the cap forward and press to snap the cap in place.
4. Release the door handle.

### Inside the Vehicle

On the rear doors, push down on the door lock knob to lock the door manually. Pull once on the door handle to unlock the door and again to open the door.

Press the power door lock switch to lock or unlock all doors automatically. See *Power Door Locks* on page 2-11.

## Power Door Locks



**Lock:** Press to lock the doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

**Unlock:** Press to unlock the doors.

## Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

Delayed locking can only be turned on when the Unlocked Door Anti Lockout feature has been turned off.

When  is pressed on the power door lock switch with the door open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press  on the door lock switch again, or press  on the RKE transmitter, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

Delayed locking can be programmed through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

## Lockout Protection

If the vehicle is in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in the vehicle and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the vehicle is off with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock after closing all of the doors.

This feature can be manually overridden with the driver door open by pressing and holding  on the power door lock switch.

## Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out

When this feature is on and door locking is requested with the driver door open, all doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock. The driver door must be closed before

## 2-12 Keys, Doors, and Windows

locking is requested for all doors to remain locked. When this feature is off, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

This feature can also be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

### Safety Locks



The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

Press   to activate the safety locks on the rear doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

The rear door power windows are also disabled. See *Power Windows on page 2-21*.

Press   again to deactivate the lockout switch.

If an inside rear door handle is being pulled at the same time the safety lock is deactivated, only that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.

## Doors

### Boot

#### Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the tailgate or boot/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the boot/hatch or tailgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the tailgate or boot/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

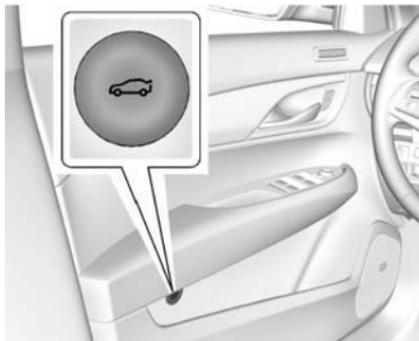
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power tailgate, disable the power tailgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-21.

**Boot Lock Release**



To open the boot the vehicle must be off or the gear lever must be in P (Park).

- Press  on the driver door.
- Press  on the RKE transmitter.
- Press the touch pad on the rear of the boot above the number plate when all doors are unlocked.

If equipped with Keyless Access, the boot may also be opened while the vehicle is locked by pressing the touch pad on the rear of the boot above the number plate while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is ever without power, the boot area can still be accessed through the rear seat pass-through door, if equipped.

1. Fold the rear armrest down and open the pass-through door. See *Rear Seat Pass-Through Door* on page 3-11.
2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency boot release handle. See “Emergency Boot Release Handle” following.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the boot.

By folding the rear seat, if equipped:

1. Fold down the rear seatback. See *Rear Seats* on page 3-9.

## 2-14 Keys, Doors, and Windows

2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency boot release handle.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the boot.

### Emergency Boot Release Handle



### ⚠ Caution

Do not use the emergency boot release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the boot as it could damage the handle.

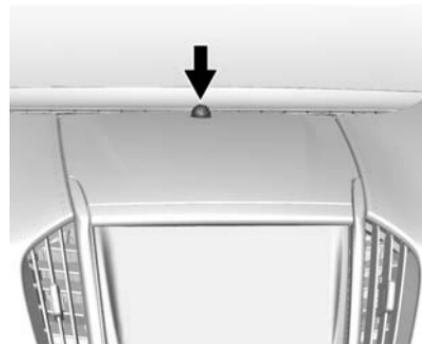
There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency boot release handle on the boot lid. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle to open the boot from the inside.

## Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

## Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windscreen, indicates the status of the system.

**Off:** Vehicle system is disarmed.

**On Solid:** Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

**Fast Flash:** Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the bonnet, or the boot is open.

**Slow Flash:** Alarm system is armed.

### Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
  - Use the RKE transmitter.
  - Use the Keyless Access system.
  - With a door open, press  on the interior of the door.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing  on the RKE transmitter a second time

will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing  on the RKE transmitter during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the boot, or the bonnet is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the indicators flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

### Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated, do one of the following:

- Press  on the RKE transmitter.
- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

### How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If  is pressed on the transmitter and the horn chirps three times, a previous alarm occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC. See *Security Messages on page 5-38*.

### Power Sounder Inclination Sensor, and Intrusion Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system also has an inclination sensor and intrusion sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is different from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm when the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.

The intrusion sensor monitors the vehicle interior, and can set off the alarm if it senses an unauthorised entry into the vehicle's interior. Do not allow passengers or pets to remain in the vehicle when the intrusion sensor is activated.

Before arming the theft-deterrent system and activating the intrusion sensor:

- Make sure all doors and windows are completely closed.
- Secure any loose items such as a sun visors.
- Make sure there are no obstructions blocking the sensors in the front overhead console.

### Inclination, and Intrusion Sensors Disable Switch

It is recommended that the intrusion and inclination sensors be deactivated if pets are left in the vehicle or the vehicle is being transported.

With the vehicle turned off, press  in the front overhead console. The indicator light will come on momentarily, indicating that these sensors have been disabled for the next alarm system arming cycle.

### Anti-theft Locking System

The vehicle is equipped with a deadbolt locking feature in addition to the standard door locks.

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, the deadbolt is engaged whenever you press  on the keyless access transmitter twice within five seconds.

If the vehicle does not have keyless access, use either the removable key or the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock or unlock the doors and operate the deadbolt.

- Hold the removable key in the lock position for a few seconds or quickly turn the key twice in the lock cylinder to secure the doors with the deadbolt.
- Press  on the RKE transmitter once to lock all the doors. Pressing the button again within three seconds will secure the deadbolt.

When the doors are secured with the deadbolt, the manual door lock controls will not unlock the doors.

Also, if the theft-deterrent system is armed, the doors cannot be unlocked using the power door lock controls.

Press  on the transmitter once to open the deadbolt and unlock the driver door. Pressing the button again within three seconds will unlock all the doors.

If the vehicle does not have keyless access, unlocking the driver door from the outside with the removable key disengages the deadbolt for all doors. However, only the driver door will be unlocked.

You must unlock the passenger doors manually or with the power door locks.

### Immobiliser

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

### Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilisation system is disarmed when the pushbutton start is activated to enter the ACC/ACCESSORY mode or the ON/RUN/START mode and a valid transmitter is present in the vehicle.



The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more RKE transmitters matched to an immobiliser control unit in the vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the

## 2-18 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---

vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, OFF), and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the centre console. See *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-34*.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other transmitter, your vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobiliser system to learn new or replacement RKE transmitters. Up to eight transmitters can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see “Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

## Exterior Mirrors

### Convex Mirrors



A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The driver and passenger side mirrors are convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat. The driver convex mirror contains an aspherical area to reduce blind spots.

## Power Mirrors



1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

### Exterior Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, there is a driver side exterior automatic dimming mirror that will automatically adjust for the glare of headlamps behind.

### Memory Mirrors

If equipped, there are exterior memory mirrors. See *Memory Seats on page 3-6*.

### Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, there is Side Blind Zone Alert. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 9-56*.

### Indicator

If equipped, there are indicators on the mirror housings. The indicator will flash when an indication is made or the hazard warning flashers are used.

## Folding Mirrors

### Power Folding Mirrors



To fold the mirrors:

1. Move the selector switch to ●.
2. Press the down arrow to fold the mirrors.
3. Press the down arrow again to unfold the mirrors.

Reset the power folding mirrors if:

- They are obstructed while folding.
- They are accidentally manually folded or unfolded.
- They do not stay in the unfolded position.
- They vibrate at normal driving speeds.

To reset the power folding mirrors, fold and unfold the mirrors once using the controls. A noise may be heard during resetting. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

### Heated Mirrors

 **(Rear Window Demister):**

Press to heat the mirrors.

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1.*

## Interior Mirrors

### Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind your vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

### Manual Rearview Mirror

If equipped with a manual rearview mirror, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for night time use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

## Windows

### **Warning**

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

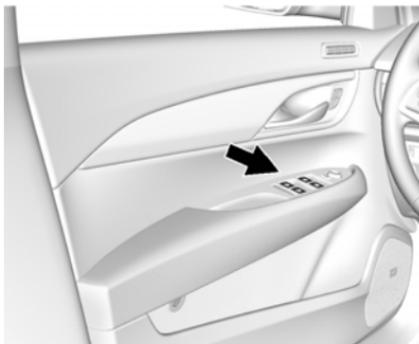


The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

## Power Windows

### Warning

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys on page 2-1*.



The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-19*.

The power window switches on the driver door control all the windows. Each passenger door has a switch that controls only that window.

Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

## Express-Down/Up Windows

Windows with the express feature allow the windows to be raised and lowered all the way without holding the switch.

Press or pull the switch fully and release it to activate the express feature.

The express mode can be cancelled by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

## Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window will stop at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation after the obstruction or condition is removed.

## 2-22 Keys, Doors, and Windows

### Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

#### Warning

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

The anti-pinch feature can be overridden when the ignition is in ON/RUN/START. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will rise for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is reactivated.

In this mode, the window can close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

### Programming the Power Windows

If the vehicle battery has been recharged or disconnected, or is not working, the front power windows may need to be reprogrammed for the express-up feature to work. Before reprogramming, replace or recharge the vehicle battery.

To program:

1. With the ignition in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or when RAP is active, close all doors.
2. Press down the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed. Repeat the process for the other windows.

### Window Lockout



This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press   to activate the window lockout. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

The rear door safety locks are also disabled. See *Safety Locks* on page 2-12.

Press  again to deactivate the lockout switch.

If the indicator light flashes, the feature may not be working properly.

## Sun Visors

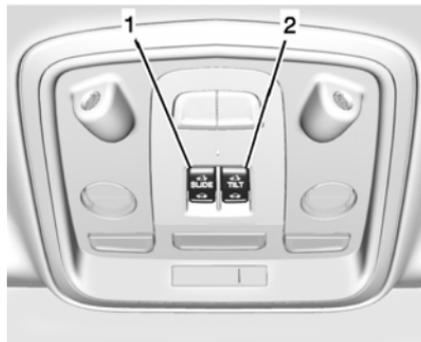
Pull the visor toward you, or move it to the side to help reduce glare.

To use the lighted mirror, lift the cover.

## Roof

### Sunroof

If equipped with a sunroof, the ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP), to operate the sunroof. See *Ignition Positions* on page 9-15 and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* on page 9-19.



1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

**Open/Close:** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the first detent and hold to open or close the sunroof.

**Express Open/Express Close:** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the second detent and release to express open or express close the sunroof.

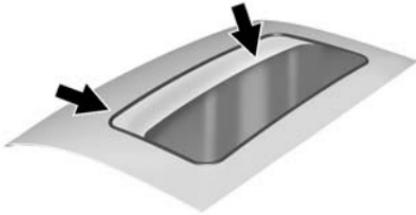
**Vent Feature:** Press and hold the front of the switch (2) to vent the sunroof. The sunshade must be manually opened. Press and hold the rear of the switch (2) to close the sunroof vent.

### Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof when it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof then retracts away from the object.

## 2-24 Keys, Doors, and Windows

---



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system.

Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

## Seats and Restraints

### Head Restraints

Head Restraints ..... 3-2

### Front Seats

Power Seat Adjustment ..... 3-3  
 Lumbar Adjustment ..... 3-4  
 Thigh Support Adjustment .... 3-4  
 Reclining Seat Backrests .... 3-5  
 Memory Seats ..... 3-6  
 Heated Front Seats ..... 3-8

### Rear Seats

Rear Seats ..... 3-9  
 Rear Seat  
 Pass-Through Door ..... 3-11

### Safety Belts

Safety Belts ..... 3-11  
 How to Wear Safety Belts  
 Properly ..... 3-12

Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 3-13  
 Safety Belt Use During  
 Pregnancy ..... 3-17  
 Safety System Check ..... 3-17  
 Safety Belt Care ..... 3-18  
 Replacing Safety Belt System  
 Parts after a Crash ..... 3-18

### Airbag System

Airbag System ..... 3-19  
 Where Are the Airbags? .... 3-21  
 When Should an Airbag  
 Inflate? ..... 3-23  
 What Makes an Airbag  
 Inflate? ..... 3-24  
 How Does an Airbag  
 Restrain? ..... 3-24  
 What Will You See after an  
 Airbag Inflates? ..... 3-24  
 Passenger Sensing  
 System ..... 3-26  
 Servicing the Airbag-Equipped  
 Vehicle ..... 3-30

Adding Equipment to the  
 Airbag-Equipped Vehicle ... 3-30  
 Airbag System Check ..... 3-31  
 Replacing Airbag System  
 Parts after a Crash ..... 3-32

### Child Restraints

Older Children ..... 3-32  
 Infants and Young  
 Children ..... 3-34  
 Child Restraint Systems .... 3-36  
 Where to Put the Restraint ... 3-38  
 ISOFIX Child Restraint  
 Systems ..... 3-42  
 Securing Child Restraints  
 (Rear Seat) ..... 3-42  
 Securing Child Restraints  
 (Front Passenger Seat) .... 3-44

### Pedestrian Protection System

Pedestrian Protection  
 System ..... 3-47

## 3-2 Seats and Restraints

### Head Restraints

#### Warning

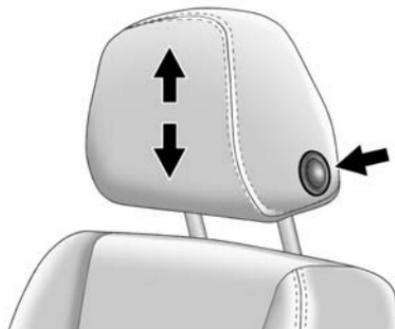
With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.



Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

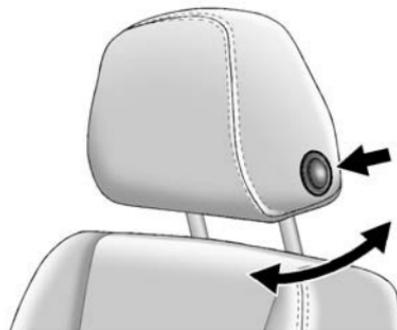
#### Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint, push the head restraint down, and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.



The head restraints can be adjusted forward or rearward. To adjust the head restraint forward, grasp the head restraint and pull it forward to the desired locking position. To adjust the head restraint rearward, press the button located on the side

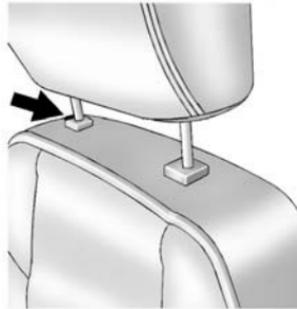
of the head restraint and move the head restraint rearward until the desired locking position is reached. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not designed to be removed.

### Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions. There is a head restraint in the rear centre seating position, but it is not adjustable.

The height of the outboard head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.



To lower the outboard head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

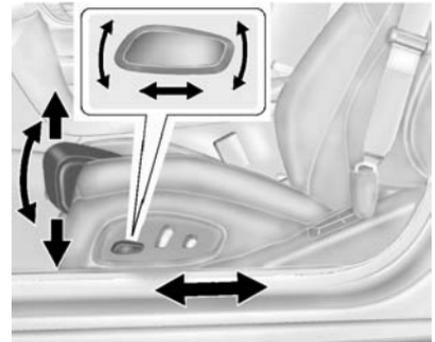
Rear head restraints are not designed to be removed.

## Front Seats

### Power Seat Adjustment

#### Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



## 3-4 Seats and Restraints

To adjust the seat:

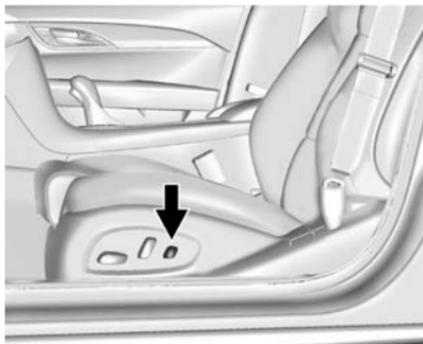
- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If available, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.

To adjust the lumbar support, see *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-4*.

Some vehicles are equipped with a Safety Alert Seat. This feature activates a vibrating pulse alert in the driver seat to help the driver avoid crashes. See *Driver Assistance Systems on page 9-46*.

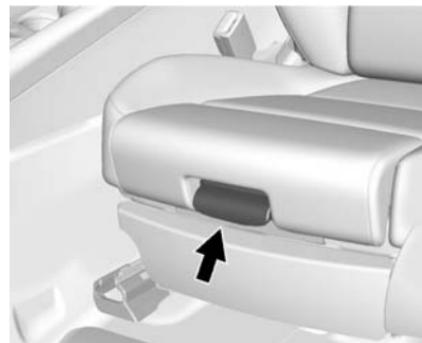
### Lumbar Adjustment



To adjust the lumbar and bolster support:

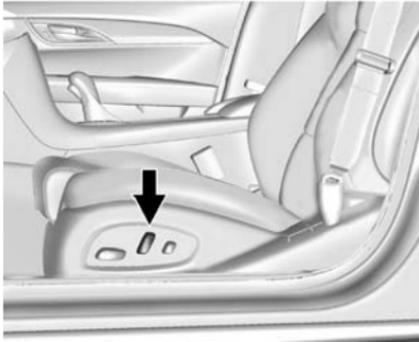
- Press and hold the control forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the control up or down to increase or decrease seatback bolster support, if available.

### Thigh Support Adjustment



If available, adjust the manual leg cushion extension by pulling up on the lever, and then pulling or pushing on the support to lengthen or shorten it. Release the lever to lock it in place.

## Reclining Seat Backrests



To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

### Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.



Do not have a backrest reclined if the vehicle is moving.

## 3-6 Seats and Restraints

### Memory Seats



If equipped, the "1," "2," SET, and  (Exit) buttons on the driver door are used to manually save and recall memory settings for the driver seat and outside mirrors.

#### Storing Memory Positions

To save positions to the "1" and "2" buttons:

1. Adjust the driver seat and outside mirrors to the desired driving positions.

2. Press and hold SET and "1" at the same time until a beep sounds.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for a second driver using "2."

To save positions to the  (Exit) button and Easy Exit features:

1. Adjust the driver seat and outside mirrors to the desired positions for getting out of the vehicle.
2. Press and hold SET and  at the same time until a beep sounds.

#### Manually Recalling Memory Positions

If the vehicle is off, or in ON/RUN/START but not in P (Park) (or handbrake not set if manual gearbox), press and hold "1," "2," or  to manually recall the previously stored memory positions. Releasing "1," "2," or  before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

If the vehicle is in ON/RUN/START and in P (Park) (or handbrake set if manual gearbox), press and release "1," "2," or  to manually recall the previously stored memory positions. Placing the ignition in OFF before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by pressing the appropriate memory button. If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

#### Automatically Recalling Memory Positions (Auto Memory Recall)

The Auto (Automatic) Memory Recall feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored "1" or "2" position when entering the vehicle.

Depending upon the Auto Memory Recall feature enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu, memory “1” or “2” positions are recalled in the following ways:

To activate the recall when the ignition is off, and On - Driver Door Open is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu:

- On vehicles with RKE, press  on the RKE transmitter and open the door.
- On vehicles with Keyless Access, press the lock/unlock button on the outside driver door handle and open the driver door. The RKE transmitter must be present for the recall to activate.
- If the driver door is already open, press  on the RKE transmitter to activate the recall.

To activate the recall at ignition ON, the transmission must be in P (Park) (or handbrake set if manual gearbox) and On - At Ignition On is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu:

- Place the ignition in ON/RUN/START.

See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory, power mirror, or power seat controls. If On - At Ignition On is selected in the vehicle personalisation menu, placing the ignition in OFF also stops the recall.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the memory item that is not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the memory position again by opening the driver door and pressing  on the RKE transmitter.

If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

### Easy Exit Recall

If programmed on in the vehicle personalisation menu, the Easy Exit feature automatically moves the driver seat and outside mirrors to the memory positions saved to the  (Exit) button. See “Storing Memory Positions” listed previously. See also *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

Easy Exit recall automatically activates when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling the exit position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction; then press and hold the appropriate manual control for the

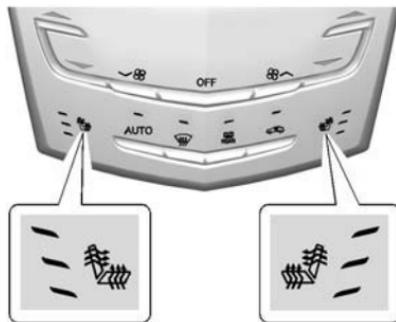
## 3-8 Seats and Restraints

exit feature not recalling for two seconds. Try recalling the exit position again. If the exit position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

### Heated Front Seats

#### Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



#### Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar

If available, the buttons are near the climate controls on the centre stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press   or   to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for

the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

When this feature is off, the heated seat symbol on the button is white. When the heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

#### Remote Start Heated Seats

When it is cold outside, the heated seats can be turned on automatically during a remote start. They are cancelled when the ignition is turned on. Press the button to use the heated seats after the vehicle is started.

The heated seat indicator lights do not turn on during a remote start.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Remote Vehicle Start on page 2-7* and *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

## Rear Seats

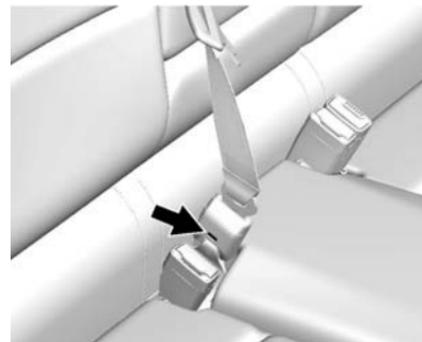
### Folding the Seat Backrest

Either side of the seatback can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

 **Caution**

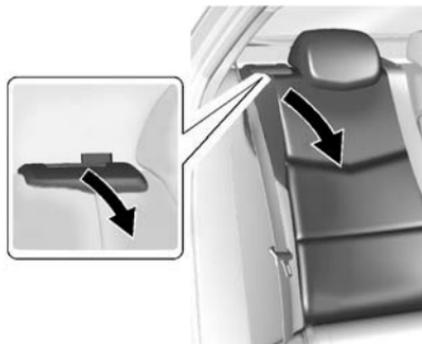
Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear safety belt mini-latch using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract.

## 3-10 Seats and Restraints



2. Pull the lever on top of the seatback toward you to unlock the seatback.

A red tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

3. Fold the backrest forward.

Repeat Steps 2–3 to fold the other seatback, if desired.

### Raising the Seat Backrest

#### Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

#### Warning

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

1. Lift the seatback up. Make sure the centre safety belt and latch do not get behind the seat. Push the seatback rearward to lock it in place.  
A red tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.
2. Push and pull the top of the backrest to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Reconnect the centre safety belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let the belt twist.
4. Pull on the centre safety belt to make sure the mini-latch is secure.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

## Rear Seat Pass-Through Door



There is a rear seat pass-through door in the centre of the rear seatback. Fold down the centre armrest and pull the latch to open the door.

## Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

### Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders on page 5-11*.

## 3-12 Seats and Restraints

---

### Why Safety Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windscreen, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the

safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

### Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?**

**A:** You *could* be - whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chances of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, are *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?**

**A:** Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts - not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all regions, the law requires wearing safety belts.

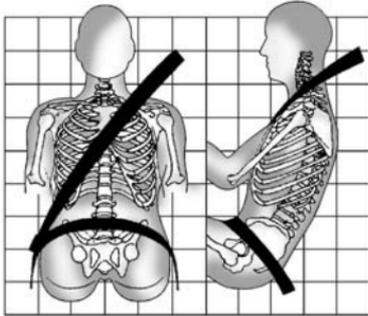
### How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-32* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-34*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt

would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

**Warning**

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

## Lap-Shoulder Belt

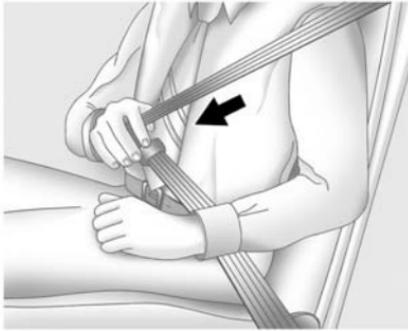
All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

If you are using a rear centre seating position with a detachable safety belt and the safety belt is not attached, see “Folding the Seatback” under *Rear Seats on page 3-9* for instructions on reconnecting the safety belt to the mini-buckle.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.

## 3-14 Seats and Restraints



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.



If the webbing locks in the catch plate before it reaches the buckle, tilt the catch plate flat to unlock.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

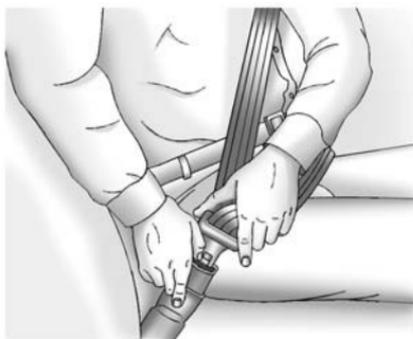
Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

It may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

### Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly.

They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And, on vehicles with side impact and roof-rail airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and possibly other parts of the seat belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash* on page 3-18.

### Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

This vehicle may have rear safety belt comfort guides. If not, they are available through your dealer. The guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed and

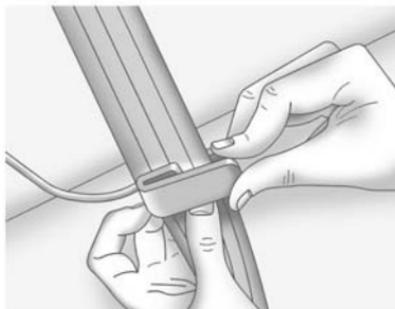
## 3-16 Seats and Restraints

properly adjusted, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

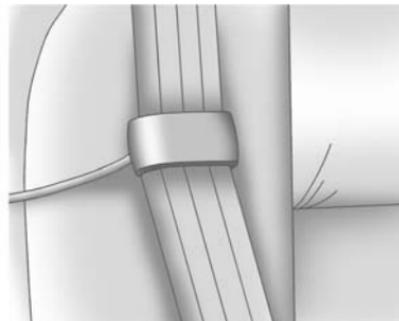
There is one guide for each outside passenger position in the rear seat. To install a comfort guide on to the safety belt:



1. Remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be under the belt and the guide on top.

### **Warning**

A safety belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.



4. Buckle, position, and release the safety belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so that the safety belt can be removed from the guide. Store the guide in its storage pocket on the side of the seatback.

### Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the foetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the foetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

### Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a

## 3-18 Seats and Restraints

crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders* on page 5-11.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care* on page 3-18.

### Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

#### Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

### Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

#### Warning

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged.

See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-12.

#### Warning

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

## Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A knee airbag for the driver.
- A knee airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.

- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- Seat-mounted side impact airbags for the second row outboard passengers.

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the centre of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For knee airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

## 3-20 Seats and Restraints

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

### Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* on page 3-23.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

### Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

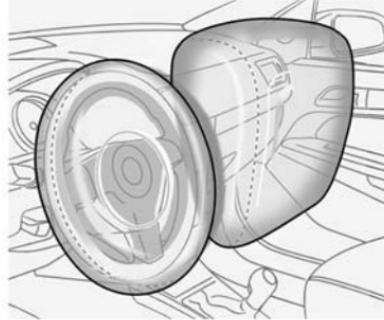
### Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children* on page 3-32 or *Infants and Young Children* on page 3-34.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-12.

### Where Are the Airbags?



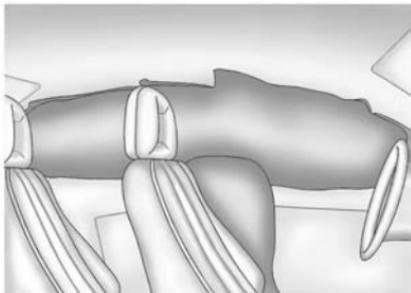
The driver frontal airbag is in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



The driver knee airbag is below the steering column. The front outboard passenger knee airbag is below the glove box.

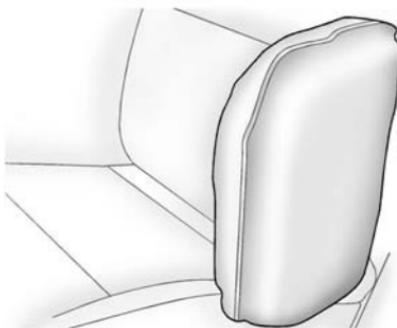
## 3-22 Seats and Restraints



### Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front outboard passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.



### Rear Seat Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

On vehicles with second row seat-mounted side impact airbags, they are in the sides of the rear seatback closest to the door.

#### **Warning**

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

## When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-19*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restraint the occupants. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is travelling.

It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

Knee airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal impacts. Knee airbags are not designed to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

The vehicle also has a seat position sensor that enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the front outboard passenger seat. The passenger seat position sensor and the passenger safety belt buckle provide information that is used to determine if the passenger knee airbag should inflate.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in

rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

### What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-21.

### How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* on page 3-23.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

### What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realise an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after deployment. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-21.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may

be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

 **Warning**

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning lights, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

 **Warning**

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if attempting to restart the vehicle after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy on page 13-1*.

## 3-26 Seats and Restraints

- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

### Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.



The symbol for on and off, will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, the symbol for on or off

will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* on page 5-13.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in a correct child restraint for their weight and size.

Whenever possible, children age 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

#### Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

inflate under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger airbag and knee airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint.

- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- There is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 5-13*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbags to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly - whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

 **Warning**

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-12* for more information, including important safety information.

## 3-28 Seats and Restraints

### If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger airbags if the system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint. If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)* on page 3-42 or *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)* on page 3-44.

5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* on page 3-2.

6. Restart the vehicle.

The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbags for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's size. It is better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

### If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Sized Occupant



If a person of adult size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.

2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, seat massagers, a laptop, or other electronic devices.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centred on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

 **Warning**

If the front outboard passenger airbag is turned off for an adult-sized occupant, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect that person in a crash, resulting in an increased risk of

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

serious injury or even death. An adult-sized occupant should not ride in the front outboard passenger seat, if the passenger airbag off indicator is lit.

**Additional Factors Affecting System Operation**

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle manoeuvres and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system

operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-30* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

A wet seat can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Here is how:

- The passenger sensing system may turn off the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag when liquid is soaked into the seat. If this happens, the off indicator will be lit, and the airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster will also be lit.
- Liquid pooled on the seat that has not soaked in may make it more likely that the passenger sensing system will turn on the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag while a

## 3-30 Seats and Restraints

child restraint or child occupant is on the seat. If the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag are turned on, the on indicator will be lit.

If the passenger seat gets wet, dry the seat immediately. If the airbag readiness light is lit, do not install a child restraint or allow anyone to occupy the seat. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-12* for important safety information.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

### **Warning**

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

## **Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle**

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

### **Warning**

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

## **Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle**

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end, or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, any airbag module, ceiling or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery, or trim; or with GM covers, upholstery, or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort-enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly

turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 3-26.

The vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tyres and Wheels* on page 10-50 for additional important information.

If your vehicle needs to be modified because you have a disability and you have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, see your dealer.

### Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-12.

#### Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* on page 3-21. See your dealer for service.

### Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

#### Warning

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-12* for more information.

#### Warning

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

## Child Restraints

### Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle safety belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Fasten the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If not, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide. See “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-13*. If the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child’s pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-13*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

 <b>Warning</b>
Never allow more than one child to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.



### Warning

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance travelled nor the age and size of the traveller changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

### Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither

the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



**⚠ Warning**

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the right front seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

## 3-36 Seats and Restraints

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint.

### Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

### Warning

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

## Child Restraint Systems



### Rear-Facing Infant Seat

A rear-facing infant seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



**Forward-Facing Child Seat**

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



**Booster Seats**

A booster seat is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

**Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle**

**Warning**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or ISOFIX system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the ISOFIX system. See *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-42 for more information.

## 3-38 Seats and Restraints

Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle - even when no child is in it.

### Securing the Child within the Child Restraint

#### Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

### Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children age 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)* on page 3-42 or *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)* on page 3-44 for more information, including important safety information.



DO NOT place rear-facing child seat on this seat. DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

 **Warning**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 3-26* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or ISOFIX anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle - even when no child is in it.

## 3-40 Seats and Restraints

### ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems Installation Suitability

Mass Group	Class Size	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX Positions			
			Front Passenger	Rear Left Passenger	Rear Centre Passenger	Rear Right Passenger
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IUF	X	IUF
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IUF	X	IUF
	D	ISO/R2	X	IUF	X	IUF <sup>1</sup>
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	X	X
I (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IUF	X	IUF <sup>1</sup>
	C	ISO/R3	X	X	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	X	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	X	IUF

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

X = ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

<sup>1</sup> = seating position in front of ISOFIX position must be adjusted to 123 mm forward of full rear seat travel.

**Child Restraint Systems Installation Suitability**

Mass Group		Seating Positions			
		Front Passenger	Rear Left Outboard	Rear Centre	Rear Right Outboard
Group 0	Up to 10 kg	U <sup>1</sup>	X	U	U
Group 0 +	Up to 13 kg	U <sup>1</sup>	X	U	U
Group I	9 to 18 kg	U <sup>1</sup>	X	U	U
Group II	15 to 25 kg	U <sup>1</sup>	X	U	U
Group III	22 to 36 kg	U <sup>1</sup>	X	U	U

U = Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X = Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

<sup>1</sup> = Seat position must be adjusted to full up seat height travel.

ISOFIX Size Class and Seat Device:

**A - ISO/F3:** Forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

**B - ISO/F2:** Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

**B1 - ISO/F2X:** Forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg.

**C - ISO/R3:** Rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 13 kg.

**D - ISO/R2:** Rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

## 3-42 Seats and Restraints

**E - ISO/R1:** Rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg.

### ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



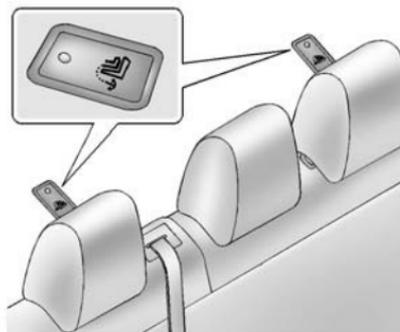
ISOFIX mounting brackets are marked by  on the seat back.

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the “ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems Suitability” table. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-38*.

No more than two ISOFIX child restraint systems can be installed on the rear seats at the same time, though not right next to each other.

### Top-Tether Fastening Eyes



Top-tether fastening eyes are marked with  for a child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether fastening eyes.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the “ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems Suitability” table by IUF. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-38*.

### Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the ISOFIX system, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems on page 3-42* for how and where to install the child restraint using ISOFIX. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems on page 3-42* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If the child restraint does not have the ISOFIX system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

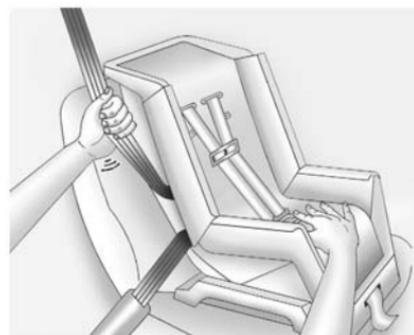
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-38.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

## 3-44 Seats and Restraints

5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-42 for more information.
6. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unfasten the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

### Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* on page 3-38.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 3-26 and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* on page 5-13.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

#### Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not inflate under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the child restraint has the ISOFIX system, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-42 for how and where to install the child restraint using ISOFIX. If a child restraint is secured using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems* on page 3-42 for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if

the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

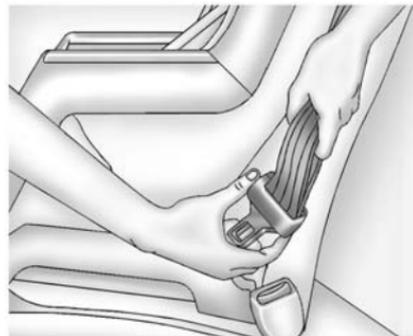
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat rearward as far back as it will go and raise the seat upward as far up as it will go, before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* on page 5-13.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

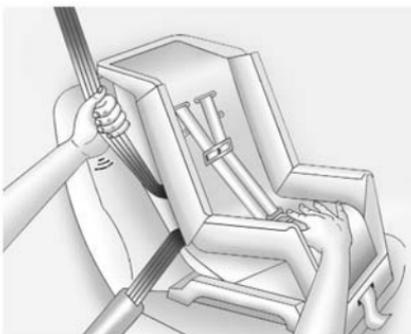
## 3-46 Seats and Restraints

---



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

6. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see "If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint" under *Passenger Sensing System* on page 3-26.

To remove the child restraint, unfasten the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

## Pedestrian Protection System

Your vehicle is equipped with a pedestrian protection system which is designed to lift the rear part of the bonnet when a pedestrian is detected during a frontal impact within the approximate speed range.

When the vehicle is involved in a frontal impact with an object or a pedestrian, sensors in the front bumper determine the force applied by the object to the front bumper.

When the frontal impact speed is approximately between 22 km/h (14 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph), the pedestrian protection system lifts the rear part of the bonnet to help reduce pedestrian head injuries. Lifting the rear part of the bonnet creates more clearance between the bonnet and the hard components in the engine compartment.

In addition, the front bumper of the vehicle was designed to help reduce the injury to a pedestrian's legs.

### Warning

After the bonnet has lifted, the rear bonnet hinge area may be hot. Do not touch the pedestrian protection system components.

The pedestrian protection system is designed to lift the bonnet only once.

The pedestrian protection system may not activate under the following conditions:

- The pedestrian impact is outside the range of the sensors located on the front bumper.
- The sensors on the front bumper are dirty or damaged.
- The path of the lifting bonnet is blocked by snow or ice. Clear any ice or snow from the bonnet before driving.
- Winter fronts, grille covers or other aftermarket equipment is attached to the bumper.

- Vehicle speed at impact is less than 22 km/h (14 mph) or greater than 50 km/h (31 mph).
- The vehicle impacts a small object.

For other frontal impacts or vehicle speeds, the airbags may also deploy. See *Airbag System on page 3-19* for more information.

After the pedestrian protection system has deployed, the bonnet will remain in the raised position and the driver's view may be reduced by the raised bonnet.

### Warning

Do not drive the vehicle when the rear of the bonnet is raised.

Operating the vehicle with the rear of the bonnet raised can obstruct your view and may cause a collision resulting in damage to the vehicle, to other property, personal injury or even death.

**Notice:** After the pedestrian protection system has deployed, see your dealer for service. The bonnet must be replaced.

If towing service is not available, the bonnet may be repositioned temporarily. See “Temporary Bonnet Repair” later in this section for more information.

The SERVICE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM message will appear when there is a problem with the pedestrian protection system. See your dealer for service immediately.

During a frontal impact involving a pedestrian, the vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* on page 13-1.

### Temporary Bonnet Repair

If the rear of the bonnet is raised, the bonnet may be repositioned temporarily if a towing service is not available.

#### Warning

Before beginning the procedure, read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could injure you or others and damage the vehicle.

#### Warning

After the bonnet has lifted, the rear bonnet hinge area may be hot. Do not touch the pedestrian protection system components.

Allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair.

#### Warning

You or others could be injured when the bonnet is lowered or latched.

Be sure to keep fingers and other body parts away from the edge of the bonnet and wings.

1. Place both hands on top of right corner of the bonnet near the windshield and push the bonnet down quickly.

If the bonnet does not latch, push down again with slightly more force until the bonnet is latched securely.

2. Repeat the previous step to latch the left side of the bonnet.
3. Pull up on the rear corners of the bonnet to make sure the bonnet is latched securely and will not lift.

 **Warning**

Do not drive the vehicle if the bonnet is not securely latched at both rear corners.

Operating your vehicle without the bonnet securely latched can lead to a collision resulting in damage to your vehicle, to other property, personal injury or even death.

4. Drive directly to a dealer for service. If you cannot go in for service immediately, have the vehicle towed.

Some noise will occur when the vehicle is driven while the bonnet is temporarily repositioned.

If you do not have the system repaired, the pedestrian protection system will not be operable in the event of another crash or frontal impact involving a pedestrian. See your dealer for service immediately.

 **Warning**

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.



## Storage

### Storage Compartments

- Storage Compartments ..... 4-1
- Instrument Panel Storage ..... 4-1
- Glove Box ..... 4-2
- Armrest Storage ..... 4-2

### Additional Storage Features

- Cargo Tie-Downs ..... 4-3

### Roof Rack System

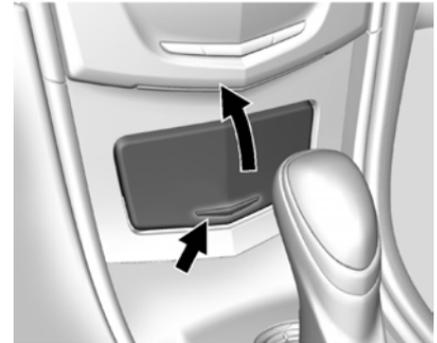
- Roof Rack System ..... 4-3

## Storage Compartments

 **Warning**

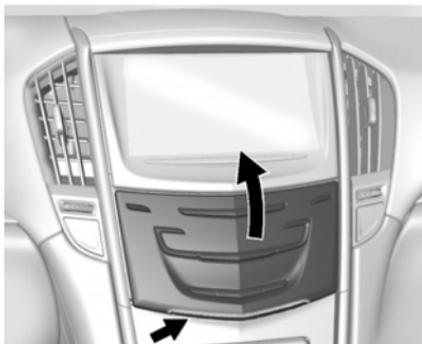
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

## Instrument Panel Storage



To access, press on the cover and release. There is an accessory power outlet inside. See *Power Outlets* on page 5-5.

## 4-2 Storage



If equipped, there may be storage behind the climate control system. Touch the bottom of the climate control system panel until the door automatically starts to open. There is a USB port inside. See the infotainment manual.

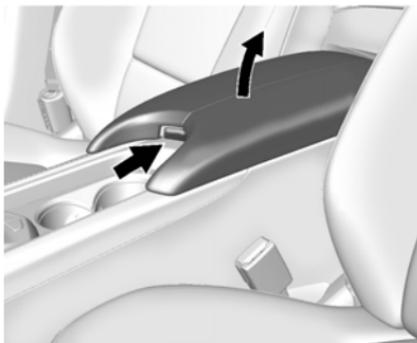
Keep the storage area closed when not in use.

Touch the bottom of the climate control system panel again until the door automatically starts to close.

### Glove Box

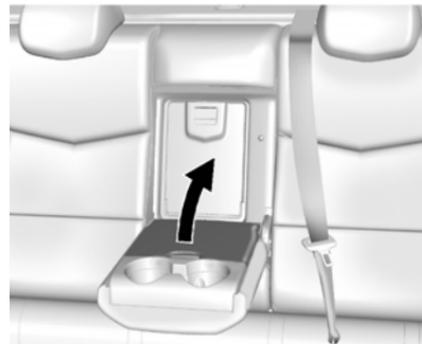
To open the glove box, lift up on the lever. Use the key to lock and unlock it. The glove box may have a compact disc player inside.

### Armrest Storage



#### Front Armrest

Press the button and lift to access the storage area. There is a USB port, SD card reader, and auxiliary jack inside. See the infotainment manual.



#### Rear Armrest

Pull the armrest down and lift the cover to access the storage area.

## Additional Storage Features

### Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs can be used to secure small loads inside the boot.

## Roof Rack System

### Warning

If something is carried on top of the vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack - like panelling, plywood, or a mattress - the wind can catch it while the vehicle is being driven. The item being carried could be violently torn off, and this could cause a collision and damage the vehicle. Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of the vehicle unless using a GM certified accessory carrier.

For vehicles with a roof rack, the rack can be used to load items. For roof racks that do not have crossrails included, GM Certified crossrails can be purchased as an accessory. See your dealer for additional information.

### Caution

Loading cargo on the roof rack that weighs more than 91 kg (200 lb) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage the vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests evenly between the crossrails and fasten cargo securely.

## 4-4 Storage

---

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to make sure crossrails and cargo are securely fastened. Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise it may result in loss of control. If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to make sure the cargo remains in its place. Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle.

See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*.

# Instruments and Controls

## Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment ...	5-2
Steering Wheel Controls .....	5-2
Heated Steering Wheel .....	5-2
Horn .....	5-3
Windscreen Wiper/Washer ....	5-3
Headlamp Washer .....	5-4
Clock .....	5-5
Power Sockets .....	5-5

## Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators .....	5-7
Instrument Cluster .....	5-8
Speedometer .....	5-9
Mileometer .....	5-9
Trip Odometer .....	5-10
Rev Counter .....	5-10
Fuel Gauge .....	5-10
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge .....	5-11
Seat Belt Reminders .....	5-11
Airbag Readiness Light .....	5-12

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator .....	5-13
Charging System Light .....	5-13
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	5-14
Brake System Warning Light .....	5-16
Parking Brake Light .....	5-17
Service Electric Parking Brake Light .....	5-17
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light .....	5-18
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light .....	5-18
Vehicle Ahead Indicator .....	5-19
Traction Off Light .....	5-19
StabiliTrak <sup>®</sup> OFF Light .....	5-19
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak <sup>®</sup> Light ....	5-20
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light .....	5-20
Tyre Pressure Light .....	5-21
Engine Oil Pressure Light ....	5-21
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	5-22
Security Light .....	5-22
Main-Beam On Light .....	5-22
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light .....	5-23

Rear Fog Lamp Light .....	5-23
Lamps On Reminder .....	5-23
Cruise Control Light .....	5-23

## Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) .....	5-24
Head-Up Display (HUD) .....	5-27

## Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages .....	5-30
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages .....	5-30
Brake System Messages ....	5-31
Compass Messages .....	5-31
Cruise Control Messages ....	5-31
Door Ajar Messages .....	5-32
Engine Cooling System Messages .....	5-32
Engine Oil Messages .....	5-33
Engine Power Messages ....	5-33
Fuel System Messages .....	5-34
Key and Lock Messages .....	5-34
Lamp Messages .....	5-35
Object Detection System Messages .....	5-35
Ride Control System Messages .....	5-37
Airbag System Messages ....	5-38

## 5-2 Instruments and Controls

Security Messages .....	5-38
Service Vehicle Messages ...	5-38
Starting the Vehicle	
Messages .....	5-39
Tyre Messages .....	5-39
Transmission Messages .....	5-40
Vehicle Reminder	
Messages .....	5-40
Vehicle Speed Messages ...	5-40
Washer Fluid Messages .....	5-41

### Vehicle Personalisation

Vehicle Personalisation .....	5-41
-------------------------------	------

## Controls

### Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

### Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment system can be operated by using the steering wheel controls. See "Steering Wheel Controls" in the infotainment manual.

### Heated Steering Wheel



 **(Heated Steering Wheel):** Press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. A light next to the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to be fully heated.

## Horn

Press  on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

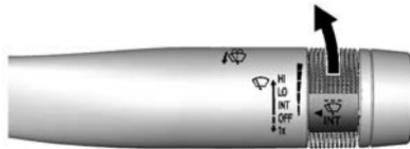
## Windscreen Wiper/Washer



With the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windscreen wiper stalk to select the wiper speed.

**HI:** Use for fast wipes.

**LO:** Use for slow wipes.



**INT (Intermittent Wipes):** Move the lever up to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the  INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

If the windscreen wipers are in use for about six seconds while driving, the exterior lamps come on automatically if the exterior lamp control is in AUTO. See “Lights On with Wipers” under *Automatic Headlamp System* on page 6-4.

**OFF:** Use to turn the wipers off.

**1X (Mist):** For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windscreen before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* on page 10-24.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor.

### Wiper Parking

If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are performing wipes due to windscreen washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

## 5-4 Instruments and Controls

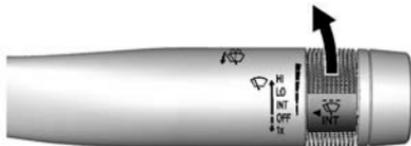
### Rainsense™

If equipped with Rainsense, a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

### INT (Rainsense Wipe Sensitivity Control):

Move the windscreen wiper stalk to INT. Turn the  INT band on the wiper stalk to adjust the sensitivity.



- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.

- Move the windscreen wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

This feature can be changed. See “Comfort and Convenience” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

### Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the windscreen wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windscreen wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windscreen.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

 **(Windscreen Washer):** Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is

released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windscreen wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windscreen washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid* on page 10-17 for information on filling the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

### Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windscreen is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windscreen, blocking your vision.

### Headlamp Washer

If equipped with headlamp washers, they are located to the side of the headlamps.

The headlamps must be on in order to use the headlamp washers. If the headlamps are not on, only the windscreen will be washed.

Pull the wiper lever toward you and hold briefly to activate. The headlamp washers will spray once, pause, and spray again. The headlamp washer will spray again after five windscreen wash cycles.

To refill the windscreen washer fluid, see *Washer Fluid on page 10-17*.

## Clock

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See “Overview” in the infotainment manual for information about how to use the menu system.

### Setting the Time

To set the time:

1. Press the SETTINGS screen button and press Time and Date.
2. Press Set Time and press + or – to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Press 12Hr or 24Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.

3. Press ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

If auto timing is set, the time displayed on the clock may not update immediately when driving into a new time zone.

To set the date:

1. Press the SETTINGS screen button and press Time and Date.
2. Press Set Date and press + or – to increase or decrease month, day, or year.
3. Press ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

To set the clock display:

1. Press the SETTINGS screen button and press Time and Date.
2. Press Clock Display and press OFF or ON to turn the clock display off or on.
3. Press ◀ to go back to the previous menu.

## Power Sockets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the front storage bin below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the centre floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload a vehicle circuit breaker or adapter fuse. If overloaded, the circuit breaker will reset after all devices are disconnected or if Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is turned off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-19*. Wait one minute to allow the circuit breaker to reset before reconnecting devices or

## 5-6 Instruments and Controls

turning RAP back on. If the problem continues, the issue could be within your device. Try another known good device to make sure the circuit breaker is operating properly. If this does not resolve your problem, see your dealer.

It is possible to replace the factory power outlet with a cigar lighter receptacle, if desired. This requires the factory installed circuit breaker to be replaced with a standard minifuse by the dealer. A minifuse will not reset and will have to be replaced if blown.

### **Caution**

Failure to replace the circuit breaker with the minifuse could overheat the cigar lighter and damage the vehicle.

When adding electrical equipment, ensure that you follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* on page 9-63.

### **Caution**

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 amps rating.

## **Power Outlet 230 Volt Alternating Current**

If equipped, this power outlet is on the rear of the centre floor console. It can be used to plug in electrical equipment that uses a maximum limit of 150 watts.

An indicator light on the outlet turns on to show it is in use. The light comes on when the ignition is in ON/RUN, equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light does not come on when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF or if the equipment is not fully seated into the outlet.

If equipment is connected using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off. To reset the circuit, unplug the item and plug it

back in or turn the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-19*. The power restarts when equipment using 150 watts or less is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following and may not work properly, if this equipment is plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage such as:  
compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools.
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply such as:  
microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

## Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

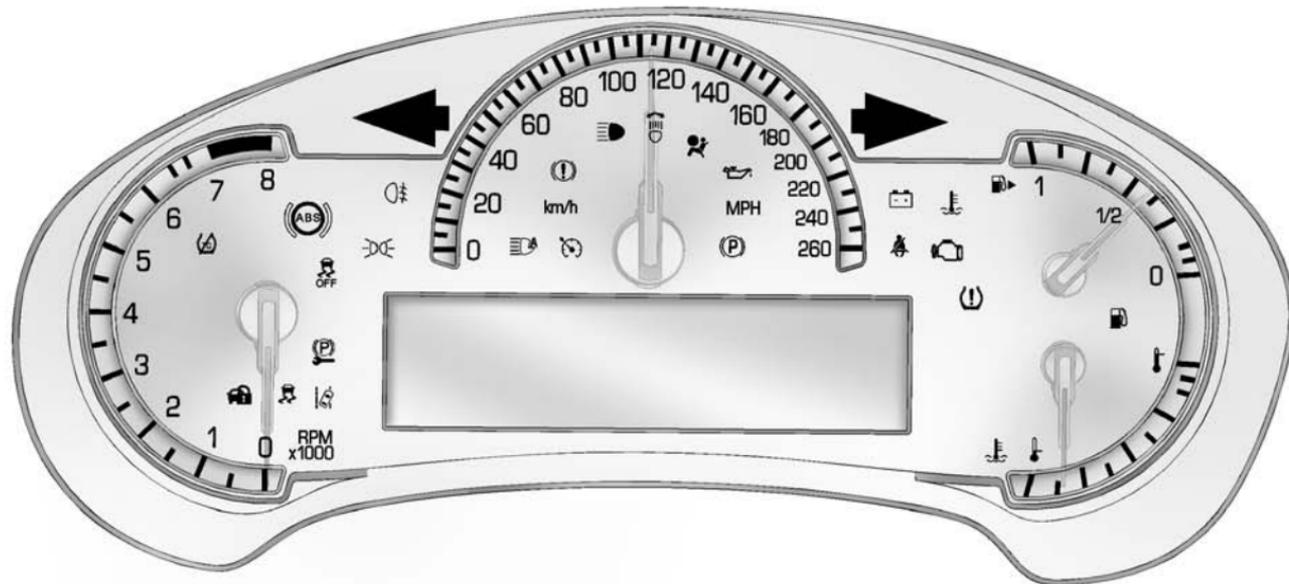
Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

## 5-8 Instruments and Controls

---

### Instrument Cluster



## Cluster Application Displays

The cluster has three interactive display zones.

Use the five-way control on the right steering wheel control to move between the different display zones and scroll through the different displays.

The left and right zones display Driver Information Centre (DIC) information. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-24.

The centre zone displays application information for navigation, audio, phone, or settings. A speedometer can also be displayed in this centre zone.

## Navigation

If there is no active route, a compass will be displayed. If there is an active route, press SEL to end route guidance or turn the voice prompts on or off.

## Audio

While the Audio application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Audio menu. In the Audio menu search for music or change the audio source.

## Phone

While the Phone application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Phone menu. In the Phone menu, if there is no active phone call, view recent calls, or scroll through contacts. If there is an active call, mute the phone or switch to handset operation.

## Settings

Press SEL while the Settings application page is displayed to enter the Settings menu.

**Units:** Press SEL while Units is highlighted to enter the Units menu. Choose English or metric units by pressing SEL while the desired item is highlighted. A checkmark will be displayed next to the selected item.

**Info Pages:** Press SEL while Info Pages is highlighted to select the items to be displayed in the DIC information displays. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-24.

**Open Source Software:** Press SEL while Open Source Software is highlighted to display open source software information.

## Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

## Mileometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometres or miles.

This vehicle has a tamper-resistant odometer. If the vehicle needs a new cluster installed, the new odometer is set to the mileage of the old odometer. If this is not

## 5-10 Instruments and Controls

possible, it is set at zero and a label is put on the driver door to show the old mileage reading.

### Trip Odometer

The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* on page 5-24.

### Rev Counter

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

For vehicles with a manual gearbox, when the ignition is in ON/RUN, the tachometer indicates the vehicle status. When pointing to AUTO STOP, the engine is off but the vehicle is on and can move. The

engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

When the engine is on, the tachometer will indicate the engine's revolutions per minute (rpm). The tachometer may vary by several hundred rpm's, during auto stop mode, when the engine is shutting off and restarting.

A slight bump may be felt when the transmission is determining the most fuel efficient operating range.

#### Caution

If the engine is operated with the tachometer in the shaded warning area, the vehicle could be damaged and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the tachometer in the shaded warning area.

### Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refuelled soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilise after the ignition is turned on and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine.

While driving under normal operating conditions, if the needle moves into the shaded area, the engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

## Seat Belt Reminders

### Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver safety belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

## 5-12 Instruments and Controls

### Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a passenger safety belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 3-26.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger safety belt is fastened, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, shopping bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or fasten the seat belt.

### Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* on page 3-19.



The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

#### **Warning**

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also come on. See *Airbag System Messages* on page 5-38.

## Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* on page 3-26 for important safety information. The passenger airbag status indicator is in the overhead console.



When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light the symbol for on and off for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag are allowed to inflate.

If the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your retailer for service.

### Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* on page 5-12 for more information, including important safety information.

## Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging

## 5-14 Instruments and Controls

system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) also displays a message.

See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-30*.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors the operation of the vehicle to ensure emissions are at acceptable levels, helping to maintain a clean environment. The malfunction indicator lamp comes on when the vehicle is placed in Service Only Mode, as a check to show it is working. If it does not,

have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-15*.



If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while the engine is running, this indicates that the OBD II system has detected a problem and diagnosis and service might be required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system also assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

#### **Caution**

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

#### **Caution**

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tyres with other than those of the same Tyre Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on.

Modifications to these systems

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

**Light Flashing:** A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.

- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to stop and park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

**Light On Steady:** An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emission control system malfunction:

- Check that the fuel cap is fully installed. See *Filling the Tank on page 9-61*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere.

A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

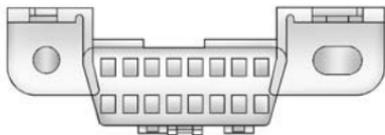
If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

See *Recommended Fuel on page 9-60*.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

### Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

Depending on where you live, your vehicle may be required to participate in an emission control system inspection and maintenance program. For the inspection, the emission system test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The malfunction indicator lamp is on with the engine running, or if the vehicle is placed in Service

Only Mode and the malfunction indicator lamp does not come on. See your dealer for assistance in verifying proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp.

- The OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This can take several days of routine driving. If this has been done and the vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD II system readiness, your dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

### Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected immediately.



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a basic braking system problem.

### Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

## Parking Brake Light



The parking brake status light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or another system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Brake System Messages* on page 5-31.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

## Service Electric Parking Brake Light



This light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible.

See the information for the electric handbrake, Electric Parking Brake (EPB), under *Parking Brake (Manual)* on page 9-28 or *Parking Brake (Electric)* on page 9-29. If a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), see *Brake System Messages* on page 5-31.

### Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off.

If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn off the vehicle. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the ABS light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but the anti-lock brakes are not functioning.

If both the ABS and the brake system warning light are on, the vehicle's anti-lock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your retailer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* on page 5-16 and *Brake System Messages* on page 5-31.

### Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Light



If equipped, this light briefly comes on while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

This light comes on green when the system is on and ready to operate. When the system determines that the vehicle is leaving its lane without using the indicator, this light will change to amber and flash.

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* on page 9-57.

## Vehicle Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this light in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays green when a vehicle is detected ahead.

This light will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-51.

## Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button.

This light and the StabiliTrak OFF light come on when StabiliTrak is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

## StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup> OFF Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. If StabiliTrak is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

If the StabiliTrak and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

## Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS, and potentially the StabiliTrak system have been disabled. A DIC message may display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the indicator/warning light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

### Caution

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* on page 10-15.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* on page 10-15.

## Tyre Pressure Light



For vehicles with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tyre pressures and the TPMS.

### When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tyres are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Centre (DIC) tyre pressure message may also display. See *Tyre Messages on page 5-39*. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tyres to the pressure value shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-39*.

### When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42*.

## Engine Oil Pressure Light



Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.



This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

### Low Fuel Warning Light



This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

### Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobiliser Operation* on page 2-17.

### Main-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer* on page 6-3.

### IntelliBeam® Light



This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* on page 6-1.

## Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light



This light should come on briefly as the vehicle is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on solid when there is a problem with the AFL system. It flashes when the system is switching between lighting modes. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* on page 6-5.

## Rear Fog Lamp Light



This light comes on when the rear fog lamps are in use.

For more information see *Rear Fog Lamps* on page 6-7.

## Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* on page 6-1.

## Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

See *Cruise Control* on page 9-35.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Light



This light in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) comes on when the Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped) is active. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-38.

### Information Displays

#### Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The DIC displays are shown in the left and right interactive display zones on the instrument cluster. The displays show the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are on the right steering wheel control.



**^ or v** : Press to move up or down in a list.

**< or >** : Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press **<** to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL (Select)**: Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

#### DIC Information Display Options

The information displays on the DIC can be turned on or off through the Settings menu.

1. Press SEL while viewing the Settings page in the centre display zone on the cluster.
2. Scroll to Info Pages and press SEL.
3. Press **^** or **v** to move through the list of possible information displays.

4. Press SEL while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a checkmark will appear next to it.

#### DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

**Speed**: Shows the vehicle speed in either kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

**Trip 1 and Trip 2**: Shows the current distance travelled, in either kilometres (km) or miles (mi), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Fuel Range:** Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**Average Fuel Economy:** Shows the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Instantaneous Fuel Economy:** Shows the current fuel economy in either litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change.

**Average Speed:** Shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Timer:** This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SEL while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press SEL briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SEL while this display is active.

**Compass:** Shows the direction the vehicle is driving.

**Turn Arrow:** Shows the next manoeuvre when using route guidance.

**Travel Time:** Shows the estimated time duration remaining for the current route.

**Distance to Destination:** Shows the distance to the destination when using route guidance.

**Speed Limit:** Shows the current speed limit. The information for this page comes from a roadway database.

**Speed Warning:** Allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning, press SEL when Speed Warning is displayed. Press  $\wedge$  or  $\vee$  to adjust the value. This feature can be turned off by pressing and holding SEL while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed and a chime may sound.

**Cruise Set Speed:** Shows the speed the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control is set to.

**Follow Distance Indicator:** When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not engaged, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value on this page. When ACC has been engaged, the display switches to the gap setting page. This page shows the current gap setting along with the vehicle ahead telltale.

**Battery Voltage:** Shows the current battery voltage.

**Oil Life:** Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-33*. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see your dealer.

**Tyre Pressure:** Shows the approximate pressures of all four tyres. Tyre pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi). If the pressure is low, the value for that tyre is shown in amber. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-41* and *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42*.

**Vehicle Odometer:** Shows the odometer.

**Blank Page:** The Blank Page display allows for no information to be displayed in the DIC display zone(s).

## Head-Up Display (HUD)

### ⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

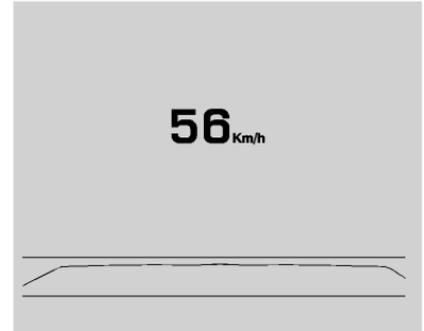
If equipped with HUD, some information concerning the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windscreen. The image is projected through the HUD lens on top of the instrument panel. The information appears as an image focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

### ⚠ Caution

If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.

The HUD information can be displayed in various languages. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio and the units of measurement is changed through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41* and "Settings" under *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8*.



### HUD Display on the Vehicle Windscreen

The HUD may display some of the following vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts:

- Speed
- Rev Counter
- Audio
- Phone
- Navigation
- Collision Alert
- Cruise Control

## 5-28 Instruments and Controls

- Lane Departure
- Low Fuel

Some vehicle messages or alerts displayed in the HUD may be cleared by using the steering wheel controls. See *Vehicle Messages* on page 5-30.



The HUD control is to the left of the steering wheel.

To adjust the HUD image:

1. Adjust the driver seat to a comfortable position.
2. Start the engine.

Use the following settings to adjust the HUD.

**HUD (Image Adjustment):** Press down or lift up to centre the HUD image. The HUD image can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

**INFO (Display View):** Press to select the display view. Release when the desired display is shown on the HUD.

**±☀ (Image Brightness):** Lift up and hold to brighten the display. Press down and hold to dim the display. Hold down to turn the display off.

The HUD image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. The HUD brightness control can also be adjusted as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of the sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal.

Polarised sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

### HUD Views

There are four views in the HUD. Some vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts may be displayed in any view.



**Speed View:** This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), traffic sign memory, Adaptive Cruise Control speed, Forward Collision Alert status, Lane Departure Warning, and Vehicle Ahead indicator. Some information only appears on vehicles that have these features, and when they are active.



**Audio/Phone View:** This display includes the information in speed view along with audio/phone information. The current radio station, media type, and incoming calls will be displayed.

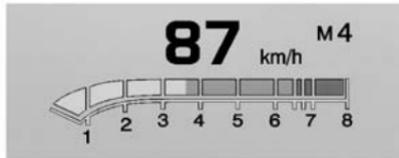
All HUD views may briefly display audio information when the driver uses the steering wheel controls to adjust the audio settings appearing in the instrument cluster.

Incoming phone calls appearing in the instrument cluster, may also display in any HUD view.



**Navigation View:** This display includes the information in speed view along with Turn-by-Turn Navigation information. The compass heading is displayed when navigation routing is not active.

Navigation Turn-by-Turn Alerts shown in the instrument cluster may also be displayed in any HUD view.



**Performance View:** This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), rpm reading, transmission positions, and gear shift indicator.

### Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

### HUD Troubleshooting

Check that:

- Nothing is covering the HUD lens.
- HUD brightness setting is not too dim or too bright.
- HUD is adjusted to the proper height.

- Polarised sunglasses are not worn.
- Windscreen and HUD lens are clean.

If the HUD image is not correct, contact your dealer.

The windscreen is part of the HUD system. See *Windscreen Replacement* on page 10-24.

### Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may display one after the other.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing SEL. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed. All messages should be taken seriously and clearing the messages does not correct the problem.

The following are some of the vehicle messages that may be displayed depending on the vehicle content.

### Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

#### **BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE**

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system starts reducing features of the vehicle that may be noticed. At the point that features are disabled, this message displays. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

#### **LOW BATTERY**

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low. See *Battery* on page 10-20.

#### **SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM**

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

**TRANSPORT MODE ON**

This message is displayed when the vehicle is in transport mode. Some features can be disabled while in this mode, including Remote Keyless Entry (RKE), remote start, and the vehicle alarm system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service to turn transport mode off.

**Brake System Messages****BRAKE FLUID LOW**

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid* on page 10-18.

**STEP ON BRAKE TO  
RELEASE HAND BRAKE**

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the Electric Parking Brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Parking Brake (Manual)* on page 9-28 or *Parking Brake (Electric)* on page 9-29.

**RELEASE HAND BRAKE**

This message is displayed if the Electric Parking Brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. See *Parking Brake (Manual)* on page 9-28 or *Parking Brake (Electric)* on page 9-29.

**SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST**

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. This is normal under these conditions. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

**SERVICE HAND BRAKE**

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the parking brake. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

**Compass Messages**

Dashes may be displayed if the vehicle temporarily loses communication with the Global Positioning System (GPS).

**Cruise Control Messages****ADAPTIVE CRUISE SET  
TO XXX**

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) speed is set. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* on page 9-38.

**ADAPTIVE CRUISE  
TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when attempting to activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) when it is temporarily unavailable. The ACC system does not need service.

## 5-32 Instruments and Controls

---

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-59*.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

### **CRUISE SET TO XXX**

This message displays when the cruise control speed is set. See *Cruise Control on page 9-35*.

### **No Cruise Braking Petrol Pedal Applied**

This message displays when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and the driver is pressing the accelerator pedal. When this occurs, ACC will not brake. See *Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-38*.

### **SERVICE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### **SHIFT TO PARK BEFORE EXITING**

This message may display if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is engaged holding the vehicle at a stop, and the driver attempts to exit the vehicle. Put the vehicle in P (Park) before exiting.

### **Door Ajar Messages**

#### **DOOR OPEN**

A door open symbol will be displayed on the DIC showing which door is open. If the vehicle has been shifted out of P (Park), a DOOR OPEN message will also be displayed. The DOOR OPEN

message may also be displayed if the vehicle starts to move. Close the door completely.

#### **HOOD OPEN**

This message will display along with a bonnet open symbol when the bonnet is open. Close the bonnet completely.

#### **BOOT LID OPEN**

This message will display along with a symbol when the boot is open. Close the boot completely.

### **Engine Cooling System Messages**

#### **A/C OFF ENGINE COOLANT HOT**

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off.

When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. The vehicle can continue to be driven.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

### **ENGINE OVERHEATED - IDLE ENGINE**

This message displays and a chime sounds when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. The engine coolant temperature warning light will also be on. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

### **ENGINE OVERHEATED - TURN VEHICLE OFF**

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. The engine coolant temperature warning light will flash. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is

safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

## **Engine Oil Messages**

### **CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON**

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the Oil Life System. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-8, Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24, Engine Oil on page 10-6* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

### **ENGINE OIL HOT, IDLE ENGINE**

This message displays when the engine oil temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

### **ENGINE OIL LOW - ADD OIL**

On some vehicles, this message displays when the engine oil level may be too low. Check the oil level before filling to the recommended level. If the oil is not low and this message remains on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.

### **OIL PRESSURE LOW - STOP ENGINE**

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

## **Engine Power Messages**

### **ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED**

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate.

If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

### Fuel System Messages

#### FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible

#### TIGHTEN PETROL CAP

This message displays when the fuel cap is not on tight. Tighten the fuel cap.

### Key and Lock Messages

#### NO REMOTE DETECTED

when the transmitter battery may be weak. See "Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2.*

#### NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED PLACE KEY IN TRANSMITTER POCKET THEN START YOUR VEHICLE

This message displays when trying to start the vehicle if an RKE transmitter is not detected. The transmitter battery may be weak. See "Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2.*

#### NO REMOTE PRESS BRAKE TO RESTART

This message is displayed when attempting to turn off the vehicle and the remote is no longer detected. Restarting is allowed without the remote for five minutes. Press the brake pedal to restart the vehicle.

#### NUMBER OF KEYS PROGRAMMED

This message displays when programming new keys to the vehicle.

#### REMOTE LEFT IN VEHICLE

This message displays when leaving the vehicle with the RKE transmitter still inside.

#### REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the RKE transmitter needs to be replaced.

## Lamp Messages

### AFL (ADAPTIVE FORWARD LIGHTING) LAMPS NEED SERVICE

This message displays when the AFL system is disabled and needs service. See your dealer. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* on page 6-5.

### AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON/OFF

This message is displayed when the exterior lamp control is in AUTO and the lights have turned on or off. See *Automatic Headlamp System* on page 6-4.

### XXX INDICATOR FAILURE

When one of the indicators is out, this message displays to show which bulb needs to be replaced. See *Bulb Replacement* on page 10-25 and *Replacement Bulbs* on page 10-27.

## Indicator On

This message is displayed if the indicator has been left on. Turn off the indicator.

## Object Detection System Messages

### 24 GHz RADARS OFF

This message displays when driving in certain areas where there may be radar interference. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), and the Active Emergency Braking System may not work or may not work as well. The vehicle does not need service.

### AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when the Active Emergency Braking System has been unavailable for some time. The Active Emergency Braking System does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* on page 10-59.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

This message may also be displayed if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system.

### FORWARD COLLISION ALERT OFF

This message displays when the Forward Collision Alert has been turned off.

### **Front Camera Blocked Clean Windscreen**

This message displays when the camera is blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windscreen behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue. The Lane Departure Warning system will not operate. Forward Collision Alert (FCA) may not work or may not work as well.

### **LANE DEPARTURE WARNING UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when attempting to activate the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system when it is temporarily unavailable. The LDW system does not need service.

This message could be due to the camera being blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windscreen behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

### **PARK ASSIST OFF**

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

### **REAR AUTO BRAKE AND PARK ASSIST UNAVAILABLE**

This message displays when attempting to activate the parking and reversing features of the Driver Assistance System when they are temporarily unavailable. The system does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* on page 10-59.

- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

See *Driver Assistance Systems* on page 9-46.

### **SERVICE AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP**

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

### **SERVICE DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM**

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Active Emergency Braking System, Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing, and/or Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system may not work. Do not use these systems until the vehicle has been repaired.

### **SERVICE FRONT CAMERA**

If this message remains on after continued driving, the vehicle needs service. Do not use the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Forward Collision Alert (FCA) features. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### **SERVICE PARK ASSIST**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your retailer for service.

### **SERVICE REAR AUTO BRAKE AND PARK ASSIST**

This message displays if there is a problem with the parking and reversing features of the Driver Assistance System. Do not use this system to help park or reverse the vehicle. See your retailer for service.

### **SIDE BLIND ZONE ALERT OFF**

This message indicates that the driver has turned the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system off.

### **SERVICE SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM**

If this message remains on after continued driving, the vehicle needs service. Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) features will not work. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### **SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE**

This message indicates that Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) are disabled either because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in the blind zone, or the vehicle is passing through an open area, such as the desert, where there is insufficient data for operation. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray, or near sites where the

sensors could cause interference. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* on page 10-59.

### **Ride Control System Messages**

#### **ALL WHEEL DRIVE OFF**

If the vehicle has the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system, this message displays when there is a temporary condition making the AWD system unavailable. The vehicle will run in 2WD. This could be caused by:

- Loss of wheel or vehicle speed
- AWD system overheat
- Certain vehicle electrical conditions

This message turns off when the above conditions are no longer present and the warning message is reset.

See *All-Wheel Drive* on page 9-27.

### **SERVICE ALL WHEEL DRIVE**

This message displays if a problem occurs with the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system. The vehicle will run in 2WD. This could be caused by:

- An electronics problem
- Worn out or overheated clutch plates
- Various electrical issues

The system may need service. See your dealer.

### **SERVICE STABILITRAK**

This message displays if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

### **SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM**

This message displays when there is a problem with the MagneRide™ system. See *Driver Mode Control* on page 9-34. Have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

### **SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL**

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

### **TRACTION CONTROL OFF**

This message may display when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

### **TRACTION CONTROL ON**

This message may display when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned on. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

## **Airbag System Messages**

### **SERVICE AIRBAG**

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## **Security Messages**

### **THEFT ATTEMPTED**

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

## **Service Vehicle Messages**

### **SERVICE AC SYSTEM**

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM**

This message displays when there is a problem with the pedestrian protection system. See your retailer for service immediately.

### **SERVICE POWER STEERING**

This message displays if there is a problem with the power steering system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK**

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **SERVICE VEHICLE SOON**

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## **Starting the Vehicle Messages**

### **PRESS BRAKE TO START VEHICLE**

This message is displayed when attempting to start the vehicle without first pressing the brake pedal.

### **SERVICE KEYLESS START SYSTEM**

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the pushbutton start system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### **TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN**

This message may display when you try to start the vehicle, but the column remains locked. Try turning the steering wheel while starting the vehicle to unlock the steering column. If the vehicle still does not

start, turn the steering wheel the other way, and try starting the vehicle again.

## **Tyre Messages**

### **SERVICE TYRE MONITOR SYSTEM**

This message displays if there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42*.

### **TYRE LEARNING ACTIVE**

This message displays when the system is learning new tyres. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42*.

### **TYRE LOW ADD AIR TO TYRE**

This message displays when the pressure in one or more of the tyres is low.

This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate the location of the low tyre.

The low tyre pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tyre Pressure Light on page 5-21*.

If a tyre pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Inflate the tyres by adding air until the tyre pressure is equal to the values shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyres on page 10-36*, *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*, and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-39*.

You can receive more than one tyre pressure message at a time. The DIC also shows the tyre pressure values. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24*.

### Transmission Messages

#### SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

#### SHIFT DENIED

This message displays when using the Driver Shift Control (DSC) and attempting to shift to a gear not appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). See *Manual Mode on page 9-24*.

#### SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when attempting to remove the key from the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

#### TRANSMISSION HOT - IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle.

Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

### Vehicle Reminder Messages

#### ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

### Vehicle Speed Messages

#### SELECTED SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED

This message is displayed when the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed. See "Speed Warning" under *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24*.

## VEHICLE SPEED LIMITED

This message is displayed under certain conditions when there is a problem and the vehicle's speed is being limited.

## Washer Fluid Messages

### WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message may display when the washer fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid* on page 10-17.

## Vehicle Personalisation

Use the audio system controls to access the personalisation menus for customising vehicle features.

The following are all possible personalisation features. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

To access the personalisation menu:

1. Press **SETTINGS** on the Home page on the infotainment system display.
2. Press Vehicle Settings.
3. Press the desired feature to display a list of available options.
4. Press to select the desired feature setting.
5. Press **◀** to return to the previous menu.

## Personalisation Menus

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Comfort and Convenience
- Language
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting
- Return to Factory Settings

## Climate and Air Quality

Select the Climate and Air Quality menu and the following may be displayed:

- Auto Fan Max Speed
- Auto Heated Seats
- Auto Demist

## 5-42 Instruments and Controls

---

### Auto Fan Max Speed

This feature will set the maximum auto fan speed.

Select Low, Medium, or High.

### Auto Heated Seats

When on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On.

### Auto Demist

This will turn auto demist on or off. Only vehicles with the uplevel dual automatic climate control system will have this option.

Select Off or On.

### Collision/Detection Systems

Select the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following may be displayed (if equipped):

- Alert Type
- Auto Collision Preparation

- Go Notifier
- Side Blind Zone Alert

### Alert Type

This feature will set crash alerts to beeps or seat vibrations. This setting affects all crash alerts including Forward Collision, Lane Departure Warning, Adaptive Cruise Control, and Reversing Warning alerts.

Select Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

### Auto Collision Preparation

This feature will turn on or off the Forward Collision Alert feature as well as the Active Emergency Braking feature. With the Alert & Brake setting, both Forward Collision Alert as well as the Active Emergency Braking feature are available. The Alert setting disables most Active Emergency Braking feature. Some last-second automatic braking capability is still provided with the Alert setting, but it

is much less likely to be triggered by most driving conditions. Off disables all Forward Collision Alert and Active Emergency Braking feature. See *Active Emergency Braking System on page 9-54*.

Select Off, Alert & Brake, or Alert.

### Go Notifier

This feature will give a reminder that Adaptive Cruise Control provides when it has brought the vehicle to a complete stop behind another stopping vehicle, and then that vehicle drives on. See *Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-38*

Select Off or On.

### Side Blind Zone Alert

This allows the Side Blind Zone Alert feature to be turned on or off. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) on page 9-56*

Select Off or On.

## Comfort and Convenience

Select the Comfort and Convenience menu and the following may be displayed:

- Auto Memory Recall
- Reverse Tilt Mirror
- Easy Exit Steering Column
- Easy Exit Options
- Chime Volume
- Personalisation by Driver
- Rain Sense Wipers

### Auto Memory Recall

This allows the Auto Memory Recall feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, On - Driver Door Open, or On - At ignition On.

### Reverse Tilt Mirror

When on, both the driver and passenger mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse) to improve visibility of the ground near the rear wheels.

They will return to their previous driving position when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) or the ignition is turned to OFF.

Select Off, On - Driver and Passenger, On - Driver or On - Passenger.

### Easy Exit Options

This allows the Easy Exit Options feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

### Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Select a volume between 0 and 63.

### Personalisation by Driver

This allows the Personalisation by Driver feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

## Rain Sense Wipers

This allows the Rain Sense Wipers feature to be turned on or off.

Select Disabled or Enabled.

## Language

Select Language, then select from the available language(s).

The selected language will display on the system, and voice recognition will reflect the selected language.

## Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following may be displayed:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting
- Left or Right Hand Traffic
- Auto High Beam
- Adaptive Main Beam
- Adaptive Forward Lighting
- Daytime Tail Lights

## 5-44 Instruments and Controls

---

### Vehicle Locator Lights

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

### Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Select Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

### Left or Right Hand Traffic

This allows the selection to change the vehicle for left hand or right hand traffic.

Select Left-Hand Traffic or Right-Hand Traffic. On some vehicles select Left-Hand Traffic, Right-Hand Traffic, or Automatic (GPS).

### Auto High Beam

This allows the Auto High Beam to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, Normal Sensitivity, or Low Sensitivity.

### Adaptive Main Beam

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, Normal Sensitivity, or Low Sensitivity.

### Adaptive Forward Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Select Corner and Bend Lighting or Intelligent Light Distribution. On some vehicles select Corner and Curve Lighting, Intelligent Light Distribution, or GPS Assistance.

### Daytime Tail Lights

This allows the Daytime Tail Lights to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

### Power Door Locks

Select Power Door Locks and the following may be displayed:

- Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out
- Auto Door Unlock
- Delayed Door Lock

### Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If Off is selected, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

Select Off or On.

### Auto Door Unlock

This allows selection of which of the doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) (automatic transmission) or when the key is removed from the ignition (manual gearbox).

Select Off, All Doors, or Driver Door.

**Delayed Door Lock**

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors. To override the delay, press the power door lock switch on the doors.

Select Off or On.

**Remote Locking, Unlocking, Starting**

Select Remote Lock/Unlock and the following may be displayed:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors
- Remote Start
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

**Remote Unlock Light Feedback**

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off or Flash Lights.

**Remote Lock Feedback**

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

**Remote Door Unlock**

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing the unlock button on the RKE transmitter.

Select All Doors or Driver Door Only.

**Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors**

When on, if the doors are unlocked from the RKE transmitter and a door is not opened, the doors will automatically relock.

Select Off or On.

**Remote Start**

This allows the remote start feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

**Remote Start Auto Heat Seats**

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn on the heated seats when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On. On some vehicles select Off, On - Driver and Passenger, or On - Driver.

**Passive Door Unlock**

This allows passive unlocking to be turned on or off and selects what doors will unlock.

Select All Doors or Driver Door Only.

### **Passive Door Lock**

This allows passive locking to be turned on or off and selects feedback.

Select On, On with Horn Chirp, or Off.

### **Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder**

This allows the remote left in vehicle feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

### **Return to Factory Settings**

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings
- Clear All Private Data
- Restore Radio Settings

### **Restore Vehicle Settings**

This allows selection of restoring vehicle settings.

Select Cancel or Continue.

### **Clear All Private Data**

This allows selection to clear all private information from the vehicle.

Select Cancel or Continue.

### **Restore Radio Settings**

This allows selection to restore radio settings.

Select Cancel or Continue.

## Lighting

### Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls .....	6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder .....	6-3
Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer .....	6-3
Flash-to-Pass .....	6-3
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) .....	6-4
Automatic Headlamp System .....	6-4
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) .....	6-5
Headlamp Levelling Control ...	6-5
Hazard Lights .....	6-6
Turn and Lane-Change Signals .....	6-6
Rear Fog Lamps .....	6-7

### Interior Lighting

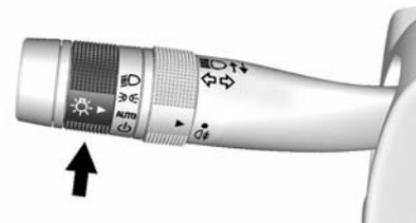
Instrument Panel Illumination Control .....	6-7
Courtesy Lamps .....	6-8
Dome Lamps .....	6-8
Reading Lamps .....	6-8

### Lighting Features

Entry Lighting .....	6-9
Exit Lighting .....	6-9
Battery Power Protection .....	6-9
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver .....	6-9

## Exterior Lighting

### Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the indicator lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

**☾ (Off):** Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released.

Turn to ☾ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

**AUTO (Automatic):** Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

## 6-2 Lighting

 (Parking Lamps): Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

 (Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

### IntelliBeam<sup>®</sup> System

If equipped, this system turns the vehicle's main beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the main beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.



This light comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

### Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam

To enable the automatic main beam system, with the indicator lever in the neutral position, turn the exterior lamp control to AUTO. The blue main beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the main beams are on.

### Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the main beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

There is a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen, which automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The main beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.

- The system detects a preceding vehicle's tail lamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that main beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The indicator lever is moved forward to the main beam position or the Flash-to-Pass feature is used. See *Headlamp Main/dipped beam Changer on page 6-3* and *Flash-to-Pass on page 6-3*.
- The IntelliBeam system can be disabled by the Main/dipped beam Changer or the Flash-to-Pass feature. If this happens, the Main/dipped beam Changer must be activated two times within five seconds to reactivate the IntelliBeam system. The instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the IntelliBeam is reactivated.

The main beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect other vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- Your vehicle's windscreen is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- Your vehicle's windscreen is covered with ice, dirt, haze, or other obstructions.

- Your vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and tail lamps.
- You are driving on winding or hilly roads.

You may need to manually disable or cancel the main beam headlamps by turning the dipped beam headlamps on, if any of the above conditions exist.

This feature can be turned on or off in vehicle personalisation. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

## Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime will sound if the exterior lamp control is left on in either the headlight or parking light position and the driver door is opened with the ignition off.

## Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer

 (Headlamp Main/Dipped-Beam Changer): Push the indicator lever away from you and release, to turn the main beams on. To return to dipped beams, push the stalk again or pull it toward you and release.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

## Flash-to-Pass

This feature allows the main-beam headlights to be used to signal the driver in front of you that you want to pass.

## 6-4 Lighting

Pull and hold the indicator lever toward you to use this feature. When this is done the following will occur:

- If the headlights are off or in dipped-beam mode, the main-beam headlights will turn on. They will stay on as long as the lever is held there. Release the lever to turn them off.
- If the headlamps are in main-beam mode, they will go to dipped beam.

### Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

The DRL will come on when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on and the engine is running.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.

- The light sensor determines it is daytime.
- The parking brake is released or the vehicle is not in P (Park).

The tail lamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

The DRL turn off when the headlamps are turned to  $\text{DRL}$  or the ignition is off.

### Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to  or the ignition is off.

### Lights On with Wipers

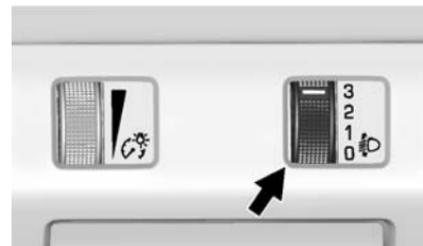
If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off.

Move the exterior lamp control to  or  to disable this feature.

### Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

On vehicles with the AFL system, the headlamps pivot horizontally to provide greater road illumination while turning. To enable AFL, set the exterior lamp control on the indicator lever to the AUTO position. Moving the control out of the AUTO position will deactivate the system. AFL will operate when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h (2 mph). AFL will not operate when the transmission is in R (Reverse). AFL is not immediately operable after starting the vehicle; driving a short distance is required to calibrate the AFL. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* on page 6-1.

### Headlamp Levelling Control



#### Manual Headlamp Levelling Control

For vehicles with manual headlamp levelling control, the thumbwheel is on the exterior lamp control. This feature lets the headlamp level be adjusted to suit the vehicle load.

The dipped beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp level.

 **(Headlamp Levelling:** Move the thumbwheel up or down to adjust the headlamps.

## 6-6 Lighting

Correct adjustment of the headlamp level can reduce the glare for other drivers.

- Front seats occupied = 0.
- All seats occupied = 1.
- All seats occupied and luggage compartment load = 2.
- Driver's seat occupied and luggage compartment load = 3.

### Automatic Headlamp Levelling Control

For vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, the level of the headlamps is adjusted automatically based on vehicle load.

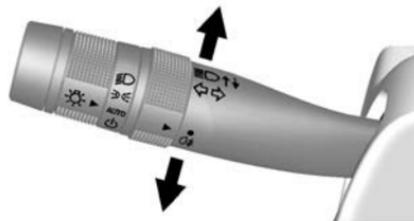
### Hazard Lights



 **(Hazard Warning Indicators):** Press this button on the centre console to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

### Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

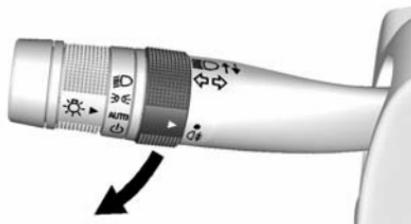
Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the indicator flashes three times.

The indicator and lane-change signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signalling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burned out.

Replace any burned out bulbs. If a bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 10-28*.

## Rear Fog Lamps



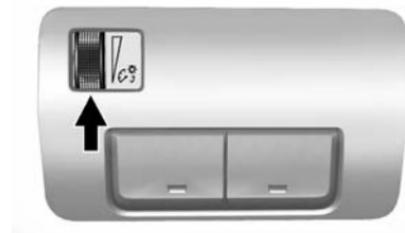
The rear fog lamp makes the vehicle more visible from the rear in foggy or misty conditions. The rear fog lamp control is on the indicator lever.

 **(Rear Fog Lamp):** Turn the fog lamp band on the lever to  and release it, to turn the rear fog lamp on or off. The band will return to its original position. The rear fog lamp is automatically set to off each time the car is started.

The parking lamps or headlamps must be on for the rear fog lamp to work.

## Interior Lighting

### Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lighting and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

 **(Instrument Panel Illumination):** Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

## 6-8 Lighting

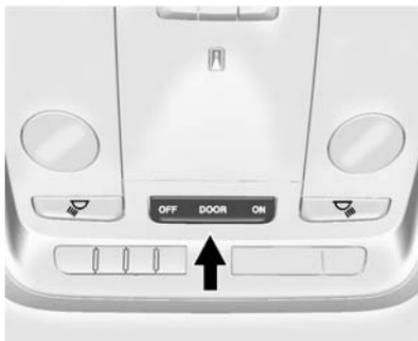
The brightness of the displays automatically adjusts based on outdoor lighting. The instrument panel illumination control will set the lowest level to which the displays will automatically be adjusted.

### Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and the dome lamp is in the DOOR position.

### Dome Lamps

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.



To change the dome lamp settings, press:

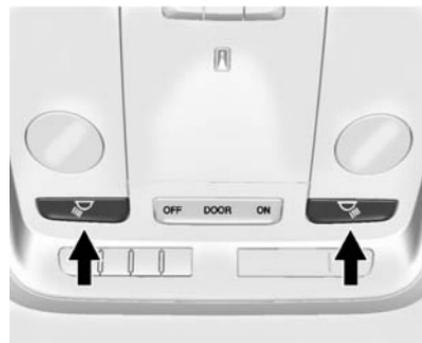
**OFF:** Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

**DOOR:** The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

**ON:** Turns the lamp on.

### Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps on the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened. To manually turn the reading lamps on or off:



Press ☞ or ☜ next to each overhead console reading lamp.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

## Lighting Features

### Entry Lighting

The headlamps, taillamps, backup lamps, number plate lamps, outside mirror lamps, exterior door handle lamps, dome lamps, and most of the interior lights turn on briefly at night or in areas of limited lighting when  is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*. When the driver door is opened, all control lights, Driver Information Centre (DIC) lights, and door pocket lights turn on. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, then the dome lamps and remaining interior lights dim to off. Entry lighting can be disabled manually by changing the ignition out of the OFF position, or by pressing  on the RKE transmitter.

This feature can be changed. See “Vehicle Locator Lights” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

### Exit Lighting

The headlamps, tail lamps, parking lamps, outside mirror lamps, number plate lamps, and exterior door handle lamps come on when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off and the indicator lever is pulled briefly toward you and released. The dome lamp comes on after the ignition is changed to the OFF position. The exterior lamps and interior light remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

### Battery Power Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

If some interior lamps are left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after some time.

### Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's 12-volt battery.

If any interior lamp is left on and the vehicle is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamps off after about 10 minutes.

If the exterior lamps are left on, they turn off when the vehicle power is turned off. If the parking lamps are turned on when the vehicle power is off, the parking lamps remain on until they are manually turned off.



# Infotainment System

## Introduction

Infotainment ..... 7-1

## Introduction

### Infotainment

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. It also includes information on settings and downloadable applications (if equipped).



# Climate Controls

## Climate Control Systems

Dual Automatic Climate Control System ..... 8-1

## Air Vents

Air Vents ..... 8-6

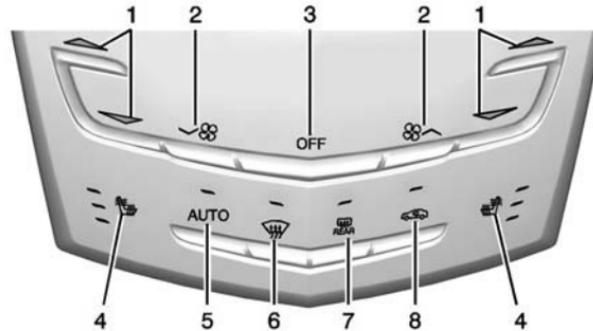
## Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter ..... 8-7  
 Service ..... 8-7

# Climate Control Systems

## Dual Automatic Climate Control System

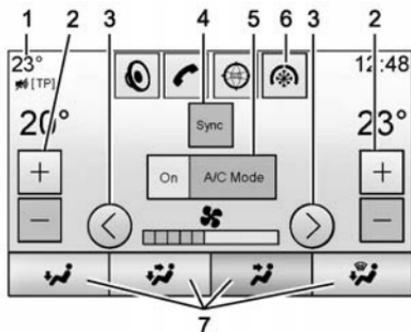
The climate control buttons and the touch screen are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Climate Control Buttons

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls</li> <li>2. Fan Control</li> <li>3. OFF (Fan)</li> <li>4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. AUTO (Automatic Operation)</li> <li>6. Defrost</li> <li>7. Rear Window Demister</li> <li>8. Recirculation</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## 8-2 Climate Controls



### Climate Touch Screen Controls

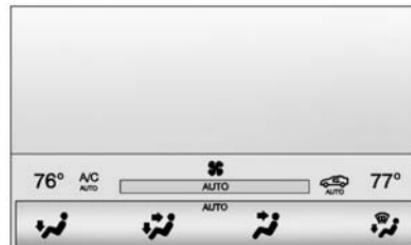
1. Outside Air Temperature Display
2. Driver and Passenger Temperature Displays
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)

5. AC Mode (Air Conditioning)
6. Climate Control Selection (Application Tray Button)
7. Air Delivery Mode Control

### Climate Control Touch Screen

The fan, air delivery mode, A/C mode, driver and passenger temperatures and SYNC settings can be controlled by pressing CLIMATE on the infotainment home screen or the climate button in the touch screen application tray. A selection can then be made on the front climate control page displayed. See the infotainment manual.

### Climate Control Status Screen



The climate control status screen appears briefly when the climate control buttons on the faceplate are adjusted. The air delivery mode can be adjusted on the climate control status screen.

### Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on or AUTO is displayed on the touch screen, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and the display will show the selected settings. Auto operation can be turned off individually for climate settings.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press  to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* on page 5-8.

**OFF (Fan):** Press to turn the fan on or off. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.

**△ or ▽ (Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls):** The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature. The driver and passenger temperatures can also be adjusted by pressing the controls on the touch screen.

**SYNC (Synchronised Temperature):** Press SYNC on the touch screen to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature.

When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC button is displayed when the temperatures are unlinked.

### Manual Operation

**▽  or  ^ (Fan Control):** Press the fan control buttons or the touch screen fan control, to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the buttons or the touch screen control to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan and climate control system, press and hold the fan down button or touch screen fan control until it is off.

## 8-4 Climate Controls

---

**Air Delivery Mode Control:** Press the CLIMATE touch screen button to select climate control. Press the air delivery mode touch screen button to change the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode button is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

 **(Vent):** Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

 **(Bi-Level):** Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

 **(Floor):** Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air to the windscreen and side windows.

 **(Demist):** Clears the windows of mist or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen, side windows and floor outlets. Some air may go to the rear floor outlets.

 **(Defrost):** Press the  button to turn on or off. This clears the windscreen of mist or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windscreen and side windows.

**A/C Mode (Air Conditioning):** Press the A/C Mode touch screen control to turn the automatic air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. Outside temperatures below freezing may also prevent the air conditioner from running.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed.

**Automatic Air Recirculation:** When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

 **(Recirculation):** Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or prevent outside air and odours from entering.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

**Auto Defog:** The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window misting, it returns to normal

operation. To turn Auto Demist off or on, see "Climate and Air Quality" under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

### Rear Window Demister

 **REAR (Rear Window Demister):** Press to turn the rear window demister on or off.

The rear window demister turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again it runs for about five minutes before turning off.

The upper gridlines on the rear window are aerial lines and are not intended to heat when the demister is activated.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister button is on. They help to clear mist or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

### Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

 or  **(Driver and Passenger Heated Seats, If Equipped):** Press  or  to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and backrest. See *Heated Front Seats* on page 3-8.

**Remote Start Climate Control Operation:** If equipped with the remote vehicle start feature, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* on page 2-7.

The rear window demister turns on if it is cold outside.

## 8-6 Climate Controls

### Sensors



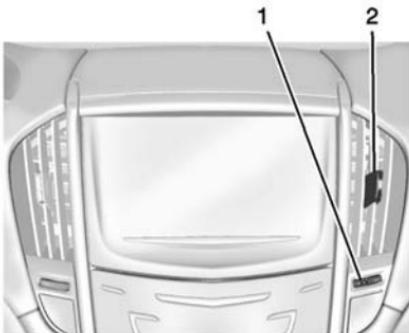
The solar sensor monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

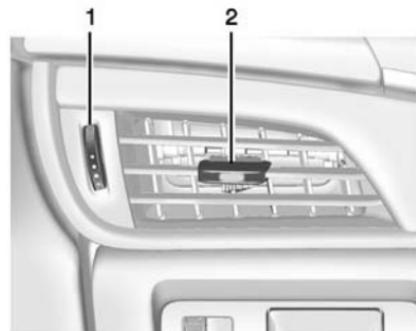
If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

### Air Vents

Adjustable air vents are in the centre and on the side of the instrument panel.



Use the thumbwheels (1) near the air vents to open or close off the airflow.



Move the slats (2) to change the direction of the airflow.

Additional air vents are beneath the windscreen and the driver side and passenger side door windows. These are fixed and cannot be adjusted.

### Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windscreen that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.

- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved bonnet air flow deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not attach any devices to the air vent slats. This restricts airflow and may cause damage to the air vents.

## Maintenance

### Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle. The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

See your dealer regarding replacement of the filter.

## Service

All vehicles have a label underbonnet that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle. It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.



# Driving and Operating

## Driving Information

Defensive Driving .....	9-2
Control of a Vehicle .....	9-2
Braking .....	9-2
Steering .....	9-3
Off-Road Recovery .....	9-4
Loss of Control .....	9-4
Track Events and Competitive Driving .....	9-5
Driving on Wet Roads .....	9-6
Highway Hypnosis .....	9-7
Hill and Mountain Roads .....	9-7
Winter Driving .....	9-8
If the Vehicle Is Stuck .....	9-9
Vehicle Load Limits .....	9-10

## Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Run-In .....	9-14
Ignition Positions .....	9-15
Starting the Engine .....	9-17
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) .....	9-19
Shifting Into Park .....	9-19

Shifting out of Park .....	9-20
Parking .....	9-20
Parking over Things That Burn .....	9-21

## Engine Exhaust

Engine Exhaust .....	9-21
Running the Vehicle While Parked .....	9-22

## Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission .....	9-22
Manual Mode .....	9-24

## Manual Gearbox

Manual Gearbox .....	9-26
----------------------	------

## Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive .....	9-27
-----------------------	------

## Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS) .....	9-27
Parking Brake (Manual) .....	9-28
Parking Brake (Electric) .....	9-29
Brake Assist .....	9-30
Hill Start Assist (HSA) .....	9-31

## Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control .....	9-31
Driver Mode Control .....	9-34
Limited-Slip Rear Axle .....	9-35

## Cruise Control

Cruise Control .....	9-35
Adaptive Cruise Control .....	9-38

## Driver Assistance Systems

Driver Assistance Systems .....	9-46
Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing .....	9-47
Assistance Systems for Driving .....	9-51
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System .....	9-51
Active Emergency Braking System .....	9-54
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) .....	9-56
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....	9-57

## 9-2 Driving and Operating

---

### Fuel

Fuel .....	9-60
Recommended Fuel .....	9-60
Fuel Additives .....	9-60
Filling the Tank .....	9-61
Filling a Portable Fuel Container .....	9-62

### Trailer Towing

General Towing Information .....	9-63
-------------------------------------	------

### Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	9-63
--------------------------------------	------

## Driving Information

### Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means "always expect the unexpected." The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See *Safety Belts on page 3-11*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

### Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

## Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some

power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

## Steering

### Variable Effort Steering

Some vehicles have a steering system that varies the amount of effort required to steer the vehicle in relation to the speed of the vehicle.

The amount of steering effort required is less at slower speeds to make the vehicle more manoeuvrable and easier to park. At faster speeds, the steering effort increases to provide a sport-like feel to the steering. This provides maximum control and stability.

If the vehicle seems harder to steer than normal when parking or driving slowly, there may be a problem with the system. You will still have power

steering but steering will be stiffer than normal at slow speeds. See your dealer for service.

### Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If steering assist is used for an extended period of time, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Vehicle Messages on page 5-30*.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

### Bend Tips

- Take bends at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a bend.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the bend.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the bend before accelerating gently into the straight.

### Steering in Emergencies

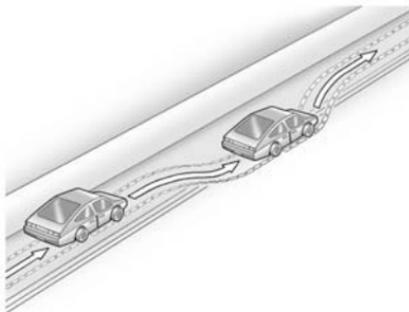
- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.

## 9-4 Driving and Operating

---

- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

### Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.

2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tyre contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

### Loss of Control

#### Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid - wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid - too much speed or steering in a bend causes tyres to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid - too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognise warning clues - such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface - and slow down when you have any doubt.

- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tyres to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

## Track Events and Competitive Driving

Competitive driving may affect the vehicle warranty. See the warranty manual before using the vehicle for competitive driving.

### Caution

Low oil levels can damage the engine. If using the vehicle for competitive driving, the engine may use more oil than it would with normal use. Check the oil level often during competitive driving.

Because the fluid temperatures may be higher, it is necessary to change the rear axle fluid after the first track use or competitive driving event. After first time event, the rear axle fluid should be changed every 24 hours of racing or competitive driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

### Caution

During a first time track or racing event, high rear axle temperatures can occur. Damage could be caused to the rear axle and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not drive as long or as fast the first time the vehicle is driven on the track or raced.

- Keep the level at or near 1 L (1 qt) above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range on the engine oil dipstick.

- Requires a 600 W fan in addition to the production option V03.
- RON 104 premium fuel must be used with colder spark plugs. See your dealer.

### Caution

Failure to change the brake fluid and transfer case fluid after any performance or race track driving could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have the brake fluid and transfer case fluid changed by your dealer after any performance or race track driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

For vehicles equipped with front Brembo brake systems:

- Performance/racing brake pads are required prior to racing or closed track driving. Vehicles with option code JE2 have performance brake pads.

## 9-6 Driving and Operating

- Before racing, replace existing brake fluid with a qualified racing brake fluid from a sealed container. Brake fluid with a dry boiling point  $>279^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $534^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) is qualified. If racing brake fluid is used, replace it with GM approved brake fluid before driving on public roads. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

- Do not use silicone-based fluids.

If racing brake fluid is in the vehicle and the age of the brake fluid is over a month old or unknown, replace the brake fluid before racing/closed track driving.

- The rear axle lubricant should be replaced with new lubricant.
- Additional cooling capacity is also required for continuous competitive driving.

### Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

#### Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

### Aquaplaning

Aquaplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tyres so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is aquaplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about aquaplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

### Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Overtake with caution.
- Keep windscreen wiping equipment in good condition.
- Keep the windscreen washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tyres with proper tread depth. See *Tyres on page 10-36*.
- Turn off cruise control.

### Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.

- Keep your eyes moving - scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

### Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tyres, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

#### Warning

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and  
(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

#### Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the centre of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).

## 9-8 Driving and Operating

- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, overtaking or no-overtaking zones) and take appropriate action.

### Winter Driving

#### Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tyres and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32° F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tyres slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tyres even more.

Traction Control should be turned on. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* on page 9-31.

The *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* on page 9-27 improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering manoeuvres and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

### Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.



#### Warning

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See "Climate Control Systems".

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-21*.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

**If the Vehicle Is Stuck**

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-31*.

**Warning**

If the vehicle's tyres spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

### Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-56*.

### Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all non-factory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry: the Tyre and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

#### Warning

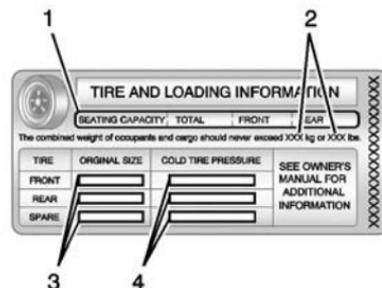
Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

### Tyre and Loading Information Label



#### Label Example

A vehicle-specific Tyre and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's centre

pillar (B-pillar). The Tyre and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilogrammes and pounds.

The Tyre and Loading Information label also shows the tyre size of the original equipment tyres (3) and the recommended cold tyre inflation pressures (4). For more information on tyres and inflation see *Tyres on page 10-36* and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-39*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See "Certification Label" later in this section.

**“Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–**

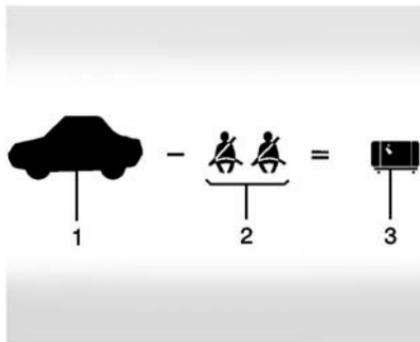
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo

and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

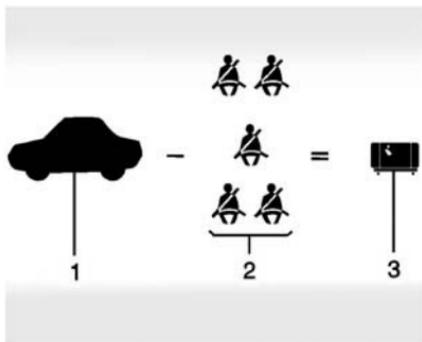
This vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

## 9-12 Driving and Operating



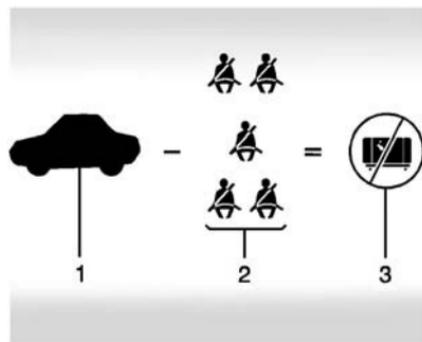
**Example 1**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs)  $\times$  2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).



**Example 2**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs)  $\times$  5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).



**Example 3**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs)  $\times$  5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tyre and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and

seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

### Certification Label



### Label Example

A vehicle-specific Certification label is attached to the vehicle's centre pillar (B-pillar). The label tells the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants,

fuel, and cargo. Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

And, if there is a heavy load, it should be spread out. See “Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit” earlier in this section.

### Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also shorten the life of the vehicle.

If you put things inside the vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they will go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they will keep going.

### Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

## Starting and Operating

### New Vehicle Run-In

Follow these recommended guidelines during the first 2 414 km (1 500 mi) of driving this vehicle. Parts have a running-in period and performance will be better in the long run.

For the first 2 414 km (1 500 mi):

- Avoid full throttle starts and abrupt stops.
- Do not exceed 4000 engine rpm.
- Avoid driving at any one constant speed, fast or slow.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle when the engine speed will exceed 4000 rpm.

- Do not let the engine labour. Never lug the engine in high gear at low speeds. With a manual gearbox, shift to the next lower gear. This rule applies at all times, not just during the running-in period.
- Check engine oil with every refuelling and add if necessary. Oil and fuel consumption may be higher than normal during the first 2 414 km (1 500 mi).
- New brake linings also need a running-in period. Avoid braking hard during the first 322 km (200 mi). This is recommended every time brake linings are replaced.

## Ignition Positions



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes: ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, and Stopping the Engine/OFF.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference

to the Keyless Access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

**Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Lights):** When the vehicle is stopped, press the ENGINE START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-19*.

### Automatic Transmission

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ACCESSORY and display a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Transmission Messages on page 5-40*. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

### Manual Gearbox

If the vehicle is stationary, the ignition will turn OFF, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-19*.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the vehicle is switched to OFF and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

## 9-16 Driving and Operating

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission or Neutral with a manual gearbox. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Manual)* on page 9-28 or *Parking Brake (Electric)* on page 9-29.

### Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assistance in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice within five seconds.

**ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light):** This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button once without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

**ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light):** This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine* on page 9-17. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN.

### **Service Only Mode**

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode.

The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

## Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

### Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

#### Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

#### Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* on page 9-63.

### Manual Gearbox

The shift lever should be in Neutral and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal down to the floor and start the engine. The vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down.

### Starting Procedure (Keyless Access)

1. If the vehicle has the keyless access system, the transmitter must be in the vehicle. Put your foot on the brake pedal and push the ENGINE START/STOP button. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button.

The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

If the transmitter is not in the vehicle or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display a message. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* on page 2-2 and *Key and Lock Messages* on page 5-34.

If the battery in the keyless access transmitter needs replacing, a DIC message displays. The vehicle can still be driven. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-2*.

The vehicle has a Computer-Controlled Cranking System. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects components. If the ENGINE START/STOP button is pressed, and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine will continue cranking for a few seconds or until the vehicle starts. If the engine does not start and the button is pressed for many seconds, cranking will be stopped after 15 seconds to prevent cranking motor damage. To prevent gear damage, this system also prevents cranking if the engine is already running. Engine

cranking can be stopped by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time.

### **Caution**

Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  $0^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it could be flooded with too much petrol. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you press the ENGINE START/STOP button, for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor

to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the button and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra petrol from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

### **Automatic Engine Start/Stop**

Vehicles with a manual transmission may have an automatic engine start/stop feature. After the engine is started and has reached operating temperature, the auto stop feature may cause the engine to turn off when the transmission is placed in neutral, the clutch is released, and the vehicle comes to a complete stop. The engine may restart if brake boost pressure is depleted, the heating, ventilation and air conditioning system detects a change in the interior temperature,

the battery state of charge is low, the bonnet is opened, or if battery current draw is excessive. When the clutch is applied and the transmission is placed in gear, the engine will restart. The engine will continue to run until the next auto stop.

If the driver door is opened while in auto stop mode, the engine will restart, and exit the auto stop mode.

AUTO STOP on the tachometer signifies that the engine is in auto stop mode. See *Rev Counter on page 5-10*. When the vehicle is turned off, the tachometer will move to OFF.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These accessories can be used after the engine is turned off:

- Audio system (up to 10 minutes or driver door is opened).

- Power windows, sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets (up to 10 minutes or any door is opened).

## Shifting Into Park

Use this procedure to shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake.  
*See Parking Brake (Manual) on page 9-28 or Parking Brake (Electric) on page 9-29.*
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Take the keyless access transmitter with you.

## Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)



### Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly applied. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-19*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) and the parking brake set. After shifting into P (Park), try to move the shift lever without first pushing the button on the shift lever.

If you can, the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

### **Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)**

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting Into Park" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, the vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

### **Shifting out of Park**

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 10-53*.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN.
3. Release the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Manual) on page 9-28* or *Parking Brake (Electric) on page 9-29*.

4. Press the shift lever button.
5. Move the shift lever.

If unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the shift lever will not move from P (Park), consult your dealer or a professional towing service.

### **Parking**

If the vehicle has a manual gearbox, before getting out of the vehicle, move the gear lever into R (Reverse) if parking on a downhill slope. On a level surface or an uphill slope, use 1 (First) gear. Apply the parking brake. Turn the wheels toward the curb for a downhill slope, or away from the curb for an uphill slope. Once the shift lever has been placed into gear

with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF, and release the clutch.

### Parking over Things That Burn

 **Warning**

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

### Engine Exhaust

 **Warning**

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or exhaust pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

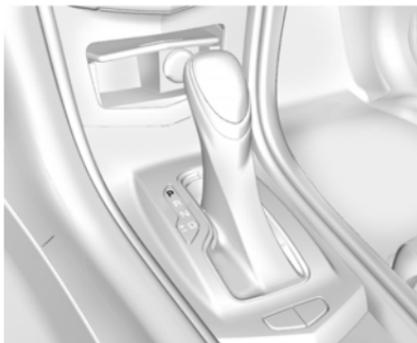
Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

### Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park* on page 9-19 and *Engine Exhaust* on page 9-21. If the vehicle has a manual gearbox, see *Parking* on page 9-20.

### Automatic Transmission



**P (Park):** This position locks the rear wheels. Use this position when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

#### Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly applied. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* on page 9-19.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. Fully apply the regular brakes first and then press the shift lever button before shifting from P (Park) with the ignition in

ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park on page 9-20*.

 **Caution**

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

**R (Reverse):** Use this gear to reverse.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-9*.

**N (Neutral):** In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. You can also use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

 **Warning**

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

 **Caution**

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

**D (Drive):** This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for overtaking, and you are:

- Going less than 55 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 55 km/h (35 mph) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

The transmission will shift down to a lower gear and have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding; see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control on page 9-4*.

### Caution

Spinning the tyres or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tyres. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

While in Sport Mode, the vehicle monitors driving behaviour, and automatically enables Performance Shift Features when spirited driving is detected. These features maintain lower transmission gears to increase available engine braking and improve acceleration response. The vehicle will exit these features and return to normal operation after a short period when no spirited driving is detected. See *Driver Mode Control* on page 9-34.

## Manual Mode

### Driver Shift Control (DSC)

### Caution

Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC.



Vehicles with DSC may either use the shift lever or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel (if equipped) to manually shift the automatic transmission.

To use DSC using the shift lever:

1. Move the gear lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.
2. Move the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

## Tap Shift



If equipped, the tap shift controls are on the back of the steering wheel.

To use DSC using the tap shift controls:

1. Move the gear lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.

2. Pull the control toward you to shift. Pull the left control to (-) downshift, and the right control to (+) upshift.
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

Tap Shift Mode can also be used temporarily while driving in D (Drive). Pull either the (+) upshift or (-) downshift control.

To cancel Tap Shift Mode, hold the (+) upshift control for two seconds. If no action is taken, the vehicle returns to automatic shifting after a brief period of driving at a steady speed, or when the vehicle comes to a stop.

While using the DSC feature, the vehicle will have firmer, quicker shifting. This can be used for sport driving, climbing or descending hills, staying in gear longer, downshifting for more power, or engine braking.

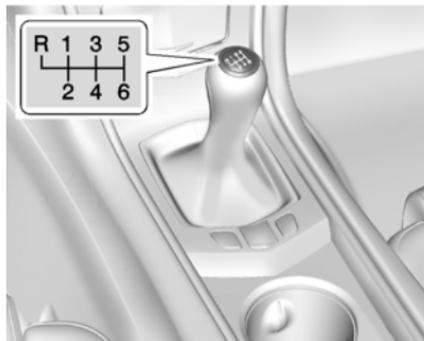
The transmission will only allow shifting into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next lower or higher gear if the engine rpm is too high or too low.

If shifting is prevented for any reason, a DIC message will appear. See *Transmission Messages* on page 5-40.

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, it is suggested to shift into second gear. A higher gear allows the vehicle to gain more traction on slippery surfaces. See *Driver Mode Control* on page 9-34.

## Manual Gearbox

If equipped, this is the shift pattern for the manual gearbox.



**1 (First):** Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal while pressing on the accelerator pedal.

After a complete stop, if it is hard to shift into 1 (First), let up on the clutch pedal, then press it back down and shift into 1 (First).

**2 (Second):** Press the clutch pedal and let up on the accelerator pedal, then shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal while accelerating.

**3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth) and 6 (Sixth):** Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) the same as 2 (Second).

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal and shift to Neutral.

**Neutral:** Use this position when you start or idle the engine. The shift lever is in Neutral when it is centred in the shift pattern, not in any gear.

**R (Reverse):** To back up, press down the clutch pedal, completely stop the vehicle and shift into R (Reverse). Let up on the clutch pedal slowly while pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Warning

If you skip a gear when downshifting, you could lose control of the vehicle. You could injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when downshifting.

### Caution

When downshifting, if more than one gear is skipped, or the engine is racing when the clutch pedal is released, the engine, clutch, driveshaft or transmission could be damaged.

## Drive Systems

### All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature always send engine power to all four wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

## Brakes

### Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* on page 5-18.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses that the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle

## 9-28 Driving and Operating

suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

### Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You might hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate, but this is normal.

### Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

### Parking Brake (Manual)



To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push the parking brake pedal down.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light* on page 5-16.

### Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release. Slowly pull your foot up off the parking brake pedal. If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will be on and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

## Parking Brake (Electric)



**Automatic Transmission**



**Manual Gearbox**

If equipped with an electric handbrake, Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the switch is on the centre console for manual gearbox vehicles, or on the left side of the instrument panel for automatic transmission vehicles. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB when the engine is not running.

The system has a red handbrake status light and an amber handbrake warning light. See *Parking Brake Light on page 5-17* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-17*. There are also handbrake-related Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-31*. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red handbrake status light to ensure that the handbrake is applied.

## EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Lift up the EPB switch momentarily.

The red handbrake status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red handbrake status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red handbrake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Parking Brake Light on page 5-17*.

If the amber handbrake warning light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it up. Continue to hold the switch until the red handbrake

## 9-30 Driving and Operating

status light remains on. If the amber handbrake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held up. If the switch is held up until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

### EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Place the ignition in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.

3. Push down momentarily on the EPB switch.

The EPB is released when the red handbrake status light is off.

If the amber handbrake warning light is on, release the EPB by pushing down on the EPB switch and holding it down. Continue to hold the switch until the red handbrake status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

### Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

### Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

The EPB can also be used to prevent roll back for vehicles with a manual gearbox starting on a hill. When no roll back is desired, an applied EPB will allow both feet to be used for the clutch and accelerator pedals in preparation for starting the vehicle moving in the intended direction. In this case, there is no need to push the switch to release the EPB.

### Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the

power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

### **Hill Start Assist (HSA)**

This vehicle has an HSA feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a gradient.

This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a gradient, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

## **Ride Control Systems**

### **Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control**

#### **System Operation**

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup>, an electronic stability control system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling.

## 9-32 Driving and Operating

---

StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or StabiliTrak begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck on page 9-9* and "Turning the Systems Off and On" later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), and  comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If  comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If  comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

## Turning the Systems Off and On



**Manual Gearbox TCS/StabiliTrak Button Shown, Automatic Transmission TCS/StabiliTrak Button Similar**

The button for TCS and StabiliTrak is on the centre console, behind the gear lever.

### Caution

Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off only TCS, press and release the  button. The Traction Off light  displays in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-37*.

To turn TCS on again, press and release the  button. The Traction Off light  displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when the  button is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

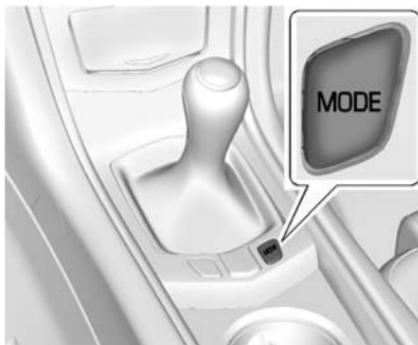
To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the  button until the Traction Off light  and StabiliTrak OFF Light  come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-37*.

To turn TCS and StabiliTrak on again, press and release the  button. The Traction Off light  and StabiliTrak OFF Light  in the instrument cluster turn off.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

### Driver Mode Control

Driver Mode Control attempts to add a sportier feel, provide a more comfortable ride, or assist in different weather conditions or terrain. This system simultaneously changes the software calibration of various sub-systems. Depending on the option package, available features, and mode selected, the suspension, steering, and powertrain will change calibrations to achieve the desired mode characteristics. If the vehicle is equipped with MagneRide™, selecting the various Driver Modes adjusts the ride of the vehicle to enhance the ride performance for the road conditions and the selected mode.



**Manual Gearbox Mode Button Shown, Automatic Transmission Mode Button Similar**

The Driver Mode Control has three modes: Tour, Sport, and Snow/Ice. Snow/Ice mode is only available on automatic transmission vehicles. Press the MODE button on the centre console to make a mode selection. The first press of the button will show the current mode. Subsequent presses will scroll through the available modes. The Tour and Sport modes will feel

similar on a smooth road. Select a new setting whenever driving conditions change.

#### Tour Mode

Use for normal city and highway driving to provide a smooth, soft ride.

#### Sport Mode

Use where road conditions or personal preference demand a more controlled response.

When selected, the Sport mode indicator will display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When in Sport mode, the vehicle will shift automatically but hold a lower gear longer than it would in the normal driving mode based on braking, throttle input, and vehicle lateral acceleration. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-22*. The steering will change to provide more precise control. If the vehicle has MagneRide, the suspension will change to provide better cornering performance.

## Snow/Ice Mode

Use when more traction is needed during slippery conditions. The transmission will use 2 (Second) gear instead of 1 (First) gear when accelerating from a stop. The vehicle will upshift normally when the vehicle is moving.

When selected, the Snow/Ice mode indicator will display in the DIC.

This feature is not intended for use when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, snow or gravel. If the vehicle becomes stuck, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* on page 9-9.

## Limited-Slip Rear Axle

Vehicles with a limited-slip rear axle can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand or gravel. When traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle. The limited-slip rear axle also gives the driver enhanced control when cornering hard or completing a manoeuvre, such as a lane change. Limited-slip rear axle fluid should be changed at intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 11-1.

## Cruise Control



Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

With cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

If the brakes are applied, the cruise control disengages.

## 9-36 Driving and Operating

If equipped with a manual gearbox, the cruise control will remain active when the gears are shifted. The cruise control is deactivated if the clutch is depressed for several seconds.

If the StabiliTrak<sup>®</sup> system begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-31*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-51*. When road conditions allow the cruise control to be safely used, you can apply the cruise control again.



**Ⓢ (On/Off):** Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate):** Press the control up briefly to make the vehicle resume a previously set speed or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to

the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

**SET- (Set/Coast):** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET- down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET- down to the second detent.

**ⓧ (Cancel):** Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

### Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control button off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press **Ⓢ**.
2. Get up to the desired speed.

3. Press and release the SET- control on the steering wheel.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

When the cruise control has been set to the desired speed, the cruise control indicator appears green on the instrument cluster and a cruise set speed message appears on the Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped.

### Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, press +RES up to the first detent briefly on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

### Increasing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

### Reducing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold SET- down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press SET- down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press SET- down to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The cruise control system may automatically brake to slow the vehicle down.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

### Overtaking Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly applying the SET- switch will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.

### Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, the cruise control system

may automatically brake to slow the vehicle down. Also, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. If the brake is applied, the cruise control disengages.

### Ending Cruise Control

There are four ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal (manual and automatic transmissions).
- Depress the clutch pedal for several seconds or shift to Neutral (manual gearboxes).
- Press .
- Press .

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

## Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it allows the driver to select the cruise control set speed and following gap. Read this entire section before using this system. The following gap is the following time between your vehicle and a vehicle detected directly ahead in your path moving in the same direction. If no vehicle is detected in your path, ACC works like regular cruise control. ACC uses camera and radar sensors. See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can apply acceleration or limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If ACC is controlling your vehicle speed when the Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak System activates, the ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control on page 9-31*. When road

conditions allow ACC to be safely used, the ACC can be turned back on.

ACC will not engage if the TCS or StabiliTrak electronic stability control system is disabled.

### Warning

ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see “Alerting the Driver” in this section. Complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

### Warning

Adaptive Cruise Control will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control when:

- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.
- Visibility is low, such as in fog, rain, or snow conditions. Adaptive Cruise Control performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip.



 **(On/Off):** Press to turn the system on or off. A white cruise control indicator comes on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate):** Press the control up briefly to resume the previous set speed or to increase vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RESup to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

## 9-40 Driving and Operating

**SET- (Set/Coast):** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate ACC or to decrease vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET- down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET- down to the second detent.

**⊗ (Cancel):** Press to disengage ACC without erasing the set speed from memory.

**🚦 (Follow Distance Gap):** Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

### Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

If cruise control is on when not in use, the cruise on/off control could get pressed and cruise control could become active when not desired. Keep the cruise control off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for cruise. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path.

ACC will not set at a speed less than 25 km/h (16 mph), although it can be resumed when driving at lower speeds.

To set ACC:

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release the SET- control on the steering wheel.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.



The ACC indicator displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD). When the ACC is active, the indicator turns green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

### Resuming a Set Speed

If the ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press +RES up briefly on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

### Increasing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator to get to the higher speed. Press SET– down. Release the control and the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden.

A warning message will appear on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and the Head-Up Display (HUD). See *Cruise Control Messages on page 5-31*.

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired set speed appears on the display, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.

- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

When it is determined that there is no vehicle ahead inside the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

### Reducing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Press SET– down and release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.

- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in smaller increments, press SET– down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, press SET– down to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster on page 5-8*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

### Selecting the Follow Distance

When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

## 9-42 Driving and Operating

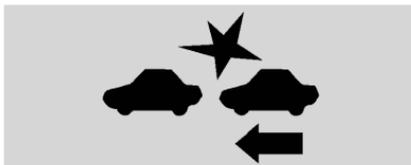
Press  $\text{⏮}$  on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster and HUD. Subsequent presses cycle the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near. The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Changing the gap setting automatically changes the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) for the Forward Collision

Alert (FCA) feature. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System on page 9-51*.

### Alerting the Driver



If ACC is engaged, driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, the collision alert symbol on the HUD will flash on the windscreen. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

### Approaching and Following a Vehicle



The vehicle ahead symbol is in the instrument cluster and HUD display.

The vehicle ahead symbol only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle's path moving in the same direction.

If this symbol is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake to vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow the vehicle in front at the selected follow gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front of you, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary.

When braking is active, the brake lamps will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

### Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects

#### Warning

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the system may not brake for a vehicle that it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and the driver will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle when:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or electronic stability control system has activated or been disabled.
- No traffic or other objects are being detected.
- There is a fault in the system.

The ACC active symbol will not be displayed when ACC is no longer active.

### Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a follow gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead symbol will flash as a reminder to check

traffic before proceeding. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. See "Alert Type" and "Go Notifier" in "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press RES+ or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver safety belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the electric handbrake to hold the vehicle. The electric parking brake status light will turn on. See *Parking Brake (Manual) on page 9-28* or *Parking Brake (Electric) on page 9-29*. To release the electric handbrake, press the accelerator pedal.

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-30*.

### Warning

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

### Warning

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

### ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, a warning message on the DIC and in the HUD will indicate that automatic braking will not occur. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-30*. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

### Warning

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

### Bends in the Road

### Warning

On bends, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle

(Continued)

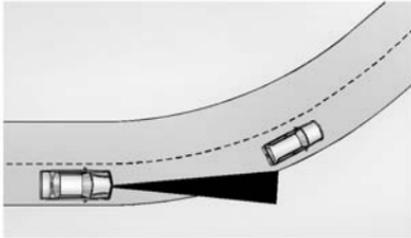
### Warning (Continued)

accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

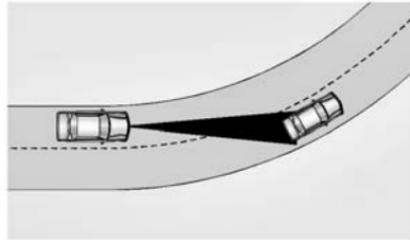
### Warning

On bends, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra attention in bends and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in bends.

ACC may operate differently in a sharp bend. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the bend is too sharp.



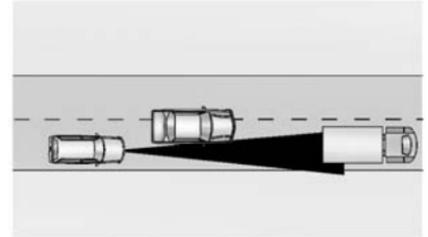
When following a vehicle and entering a bend, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens the vehicle ahead symbol will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

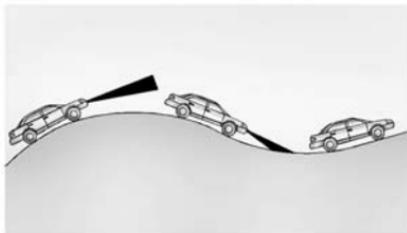
ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a bend. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

### Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brake may need to be manually applied.

### Do Not Use ACC on Hills and When Towing a Trailer



Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills or when towing a trailer. ACC will not detect a vehicle in the lane while driving on steep hills. The driver will often need to take over acceleration and braking on steep hills, especially when towing a trailer. If the brakes are applied, the ACC disengages.

### Ending ACC

There are three ways to disengage ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .

- Press .

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

### Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the back of the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

For cleaning instructions, see “Washing the Vehicle” under *Exterior Care on page 10-59*.

System operation may also be limited under snow, heavy rain or road spray conditions.

## Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

### Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

**Audible or Safety Alert Seat**

Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Comfort and Convenience” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* on page 5-41.

**Assistance Systems for Parking or Reversing**

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), the Rear Vision Camera (RVC) and Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) may help the driver to avoid a crash or to reduce crash damage while parking or reversing. Some models may also have the Rear Automatic Braking and Reversing

Warning System, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), and/or Front Parking Assist.

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the centre stack display. When the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), the screen returns to the previous content, after a short delay. To see the previous content sooner, press one of the radio buttons. If the message Service Rear Camera System is displayed, the vehicle may need service.

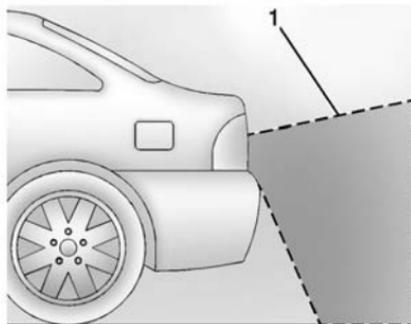
 **Warning**

The RVC system does not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or any other object located outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Perceived distances may be different from actual distances. Do not reverse

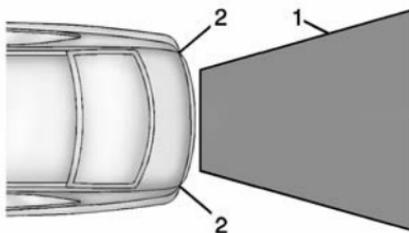
(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

the vehicle using only the RVC screen, during longer, higher speed reversing manoeuvres, or where there could be cross traffic. Failure to use proper care before reversing may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check behind and around the vehicle before reversing.



1. View Displayed by the Camera



1. View Displayed by the Camera
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may display on the RVC screen to show where the Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

On vehicles with the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), a triangle with an arrow may also display on the

RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from either direction. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side behind the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound from the left or right side or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

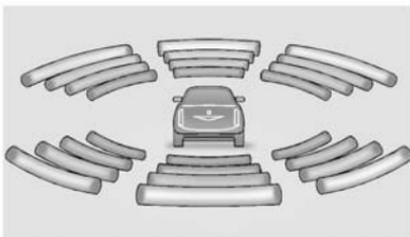
Use caution while reversing when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

URPA, and if equipped, also Front Park Assist, operates at speeds of less than 8 km/h (5 mph) and detects nearby objects within a zone 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level. The sensors on the rear bumper detect objects up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind the vehicle. If the vehicle has the Front Parking Assist, it also detects objects 1.2 m (4 ft) in front of the

vehicle. These detection distances may be less during warmer or humid weather.

### Warning

The parking assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or reversing.



The vehicle may have an instrument cluster parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object location information for URPA, and on some vehicles, for the Front Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up and the bars change colour from yellow to amber to red.

When an object is first detected in the rear, one beep will be heard from the rear, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse two times. When an object is very close (<0.6 m (2 ft) in the vehicle rear, or <0.3 m (1 ft) in the vehicle front), five beeps will sound from the rear or front depending where the object is detected, or both sides of the

Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. Beeps for Front Parking Assist are higher pitched than for Rear Parking Assist.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) have the Reversing Warning System, which is designed to help avoid reversing crashes. The system can warn of rear objects when reversing at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The Reversing Warning System will beep once from the rear when a potential object threat is first detected, or pulse twice on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. When the system detects a potential imminent crash, beeps will be heard from the rear, or five pulses will be felt on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. There may also be a brief, sharp application of the brakes.

### Warning

The Reversing Warning System only operates at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. In some situations, such as at higher reversing speeds, there may not be enough time for the short, sharp application of the vehicle brake system to occur. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with the Reversing Warning System, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before reversing.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) also have the Rear Automatic Braking system, which is designed to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by reversing crashes. If the system detects the vehicle is reversing too fast to avoid

a crash with a detected object, it may automatically brake hard to a stop.

### Warning

Rear Automatic Braking may not avoid many types of reversing crashes. Do not wait for the automatic braking to apply. This system is not designed to replace driver braking, but only acts when the vehicle may not stop in time. The system, in some situations or environments, may not brake or may not brake in time to avoid a crash. It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with Rear Automatic Braking, always check the area around the vehicle before and while reversing.

Pressing the brake pedal after the vehicle comes to a stop will release the Rear Automatic Braking. If the brake pedal is not pressed within two seconds after the stop, the electric parking brake is set. Release the electric handbrake. When it is safe, pressing the accelerator pedal firmly at any time will override the Rear Automatic Braking.

### Warning

There may be instances where unexpected or undesired automatic braking occurs. If this happens, either press the brake pedal or firmly press the accelerator pedal to release the brakes from the Rear Automatic Braking system. Before releasing the brakes, check the RVC screen and check the area around the vehicle to make sure it is safe to proceed.

## Turning the Features On or Off



The **P** button to the left of the steering wheel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist, Rear Automatic Braking, and Reversing Warning System at the same time. The indicator light next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist when towing a trailer.

The Rear Vision Camera (RVC), the parking assist symbols, guidance lines, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) can be turned on or off through the Settings menu on the infotainment system:

1. On the infotainment system, press the Settings screen button, or turn the MENU knob to highlight Settings and press MENU.
2. Select Rear Camera.
3. Press Rear Camera Display, Park Assist Symbols, Guidance Lines, or Rear Cross Traffic Alert and then select OFF or ON.

## Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle forward, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), and/or the Active

Emergency Braking System can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

## Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a flashing red alert on the windscreen, and rapidly beeps or pulses the Safety Alert Seat when approaching a vehicle directly ahead too quickly. FCA also lights an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control on page 9-38*.

### Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving on page 9-2*.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control, or if your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), through vehicle personalisation. See the “Auto Collision Preparation” portion of “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

### Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected ahead, the vehicle-ahead indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected in front. Vehicles may not be detected on bends, highway exit ramps, or hills; or due to poor visibility. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

### Warning

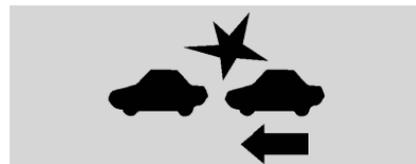
FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA

(Continued)

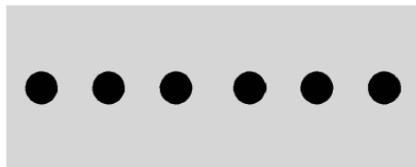
### Warning (Continued)

sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

### Collision Alert



**With Head-Up Display**



**Without Head-Up Display**

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windscreen. Also, either eight high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times.

**Tailgating Alert**



The vehicle-ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

**Selecting the Alert Timing**



**With Adaptive Cruise Control**



**Without Adaptive Cruise Control**

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press or to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, Near, or on some vehicles, Off. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

If your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), changing the FCA timing setting automatically changes the following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near).

### Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

### Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windscreen in front of the camera sensor and the front of the vehicle may correct the issue.

### Active Emergency Braking System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the Active Emergency Braking System, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) and the Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System. These systems can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle to help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes.

### Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

#### Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

### Automatic Collision Preparation (ACP) System

ACP may help reduce crash damage by applying the vehicle's brake system and has a detection range of approximately 60 m (197 ft). Braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected ahead in your path. This is shown by the FCA vehicle-ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* on page 9-51.

#### Warning

ACP is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on ACP to brake the vehicle.

ACP may not:

- Respond to stopped vehicles, pedestrians, or animals.
- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Detect a stopped or slow-moving vehicle or other object ahead.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow. In these situations, ACP sensor performance is limited.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

**Brake Preparation**

When quickly approaching a vehicle ahead, Brake Preparation reduces brake response time by having the brake system prepared for driver braking to occur more rapidly.

**Automatic Braking**

In some imminent front-end crash situations, if the driver has not applied the brakes, Automatic Braking applies the brakes to help reduce crash damage. It may even help avoid some very low speed crashes.

Automatic Braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, Automatic Braking will engage the electric handbrake, Electric Parking Brake (EPB), to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release the EPB, press the EPB button. A firm press of the accelerator pedal will also release Automatic Braking and the EPB.

 **Warning**

Automatic Braking may automatically brake the vehicle in situations where it may be unnecessary. It could respond to  
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. This could be uncomfortable and startling. To override Automatic Braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Automatic Braking can be disabled or reduced through vehicle personalisation. See the “Auto Collision Preparation” portion of “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*.

 **Warning**

Using the Automatic Collision Preparation System while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system off when towing a trailer.

## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the Side Blind Zone Alert system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. The SBZA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the indicator is on.

### Warning

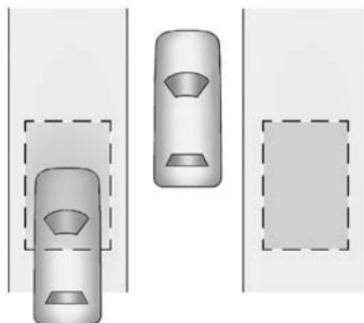
SBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the indicators.

### SBZA Detection Zones

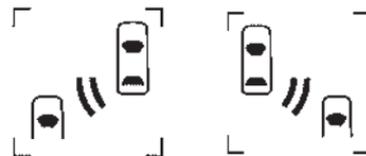


The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the

ground. This zone starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft).

### How the System Works

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the indicators.



**Left Side Mirror Display**      **Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is moving forward, the

left- or right-side mirror display will light up if a vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the indicator is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-41*. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

### **When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly**

SBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly or when towing a trailer. The SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. SBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side

of the vehicle. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care on page 10-59*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalisation menu.

### **Declaration of Conformity**

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

### **Lane Departure Warning (LDW)**

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide a warning if the vehicle is crossing a detected lane marking without using an indicator in the lane departure direction. LDW uses a camera sensor to detect the lane markings. It only operates at speeds of 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater.

When the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking, the LDW indicator will flash and either three beeps will be sounded from the left or right side, or three Safety Alert Seat pulses will occur on the left or right side of the seat, depending on the lane departure direction. LDW will not warn if the indicator is on in the departure direction, or if a sharp manoeuvre is made.

### **Warning**

The LDW system is an aid to help the vehicle stay in the driving lane. It does not steer the vehicle. The LDW system may not:

- Provide enough time to avoid a crash.
- Detect lane markings under bad weather conditions or if the windscreen is dirty.
- Detect lane markings and will not detect road edges.

(Continued)

### **Warning (Continued)**

- Warn that the vehicle is crossing a lane marking if the system does not detect the lane marking.

If LDW only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only warn you when departing the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marker. Even with LDW, always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen clean and do not use LDW in bad weather conditions.

### **How the System Works**

The LDW camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LDW on and off, press  to the left of the steering wheel. The control indicator will light when LDW is on.



When the vehicle is started, the LDW indicator on the instrument cluster will come on briefly.

If LDW is on, the LDW indicator will appear green if the system detects a left or right lane marking while the vehicle is travelling at 56 km/h (35 mph) or greater. If the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking without using the indicator in the lane departure direction, this indicator will change to amber and

flash. In addition, three beeps will sound from the left or right side, or the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times on either the left or right side of the seat, depending on the lane departure direction.

**When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly**

If the LDW symbol does not appear when the system is on and the vehicle is travelling at least 56 km/h (35 mph):

- The lane markings on the road may not be seen.
- The camera sensor may be blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- The windscreen may be damaged.
- The weather may be limiting visibility.

This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service. Clean the windscreen.

Lane markings may not be detected on bends, motorway exit ramps, or hills; or due to poor visibility.

If the LDW camera system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windscreen in front of the camera sensor may correct the issue.

 <b>Warning</b>
<p>LDW does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects the lane markings. LDW may not detect the lane markings if the camera sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a lane on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(Continued)</p>

<b>Warning (Continued)</b>
<p>or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair.</p>

LDW warnings may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

### Fuel

Use the recommended fuel for proper vehicle maintenance.

### Recommended Fuel

Use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 97 RON or higher. Regular unleaded gasoline rated at 95 RON or higher can be used, but acceleration could be reduced, and an audible knocking noise may be heard. If the octane is less than 97 RON, a heavy knocking noise may be heard. If this occurs, use a petrol rated at 97 RON or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. If heavy knocking is heard when using petrol rated at 97 RON or higher, the engine needs service.

### Use of Seasonal Fuels

Use summer and winter fuels in the appropriate season. Driving or starting could be affected if the incorrect fuel is used. Drive the

vehicle with the engine running until the fuel is a half tank or less, then refuel with the current seasonal fuel.

### Prohibited Fuels

Petrols containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated petrols are available in some cities. If these petrols comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in flex fuel vehicles.

 **Caution**

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.

Some petrols that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use petrols with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, see your dealer for service.

### Fuel Additives

Petrol should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. Some petrol does not contain sufficient quantities of additive to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. To make up for this lack of detergency, add Fuel System Treatment PLUS, part number

88861013 to the fuel tank at every engine oil change or every 15 000 km, whichever occurs first.

## Filling the Tank

### Warning

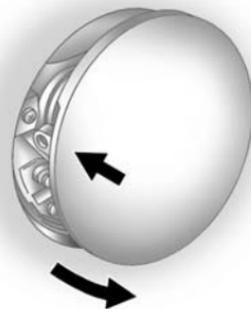
Fuel vapours and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refuelling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not reenter the vehicle while pumping fuel.

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Fuel can spray out if the fuel cap is opened too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop then unscrew the cap all the way



The cap is behind the fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle. If equipped, the fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press ✓ on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To open the fuel filler flap, push and release the rearward centre edge of the flap.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly anticlockwise.

While refuelling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

## 9-62 Driving and Operating

If the fuel cap is not installed properly, a message will appear on the Driver Information Centre display. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-34*.

When reinstalling the cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once, otherwise the malfunction indicator lamp could turn on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care on page 10-59*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.

### Warning

If a fire starts while you are refuelling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

### Caution

If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap might not fit properly, might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-14*.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

### Warning

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapours that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.
- Remove the container from the vehicle, boot, or pickup bed before filling.
- Place the container on the ground.
- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.

- Fill the container no more than 95% full to allow for expansion.
- Do not smoke, light matches, or use lighters while pumping fuel.
- Avoid using mobile phones or other electronic devices.

**Trailer Towing****General Towing Information**

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

**Conversions and Add-Ons****Add-On Electrical Equipment****Caution**

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-30* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-30*.



# Vehicle Care

## General Information

General Information .....	10-2
Accessories and Modifications .....	10-2

## Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work .....	10-3
Bonnet .....	10-3
Engine Compartment Overview .....	10-5
Engine Oil .....	10-6
Engine Oil Life System .....	10-8
Automatic Transmission Fluid .....	10-9
Manual Gearbox Fluid .....	10-9
Hydraulic Clutch .....	10-10
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter .....	10-10
Cooling System .....	10-11
Engine Coolant .....	10-12
Engine Overheating .....	10-15
Washer Fluid .....	10-17
Brakes .....	10-17
Brake Fluid .....	10-18
Battery .....	10-20
All-Wheel Drive .....	10-21

Starter Switch Check .....	10-22
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check .....	10-23
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check .....	10-23
Wiper Blade Replacement .....	10-24
Windscreen Replacement .....	10-24

## Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp Aiming .....	10-25
-----------------------	-------

## Bulb Replacement

Bulb Replacement .....	10-25
Halogen Bulbs .....	10-25
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting .....	10-25
LED Lighting .....	10-25
Back-Up Lamps .....	10-26
Number Plate Lamp .....	10-26
Replacement Bulbs .....	10-27

## Electrical System

Electrical System Overload .....	10-27
Fuses and Circuit Breakers .....	10-28

Engine Compartment Fuse Block .....	10-28
Instrument Panel Fuse Block .....	10-31
Rear Compartment Fuse Block .....	10-34

## Wheels and Tyres

Tyres .....	10-36
All-Season Tyres .....	10-37
Winter Tyres .....	10-37
Run-Flat Tyres .....	10-38
Summer Tyres .....	10-39
Tyre Pressure .....	10-39
Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation .....	10-40
Tyre Pressure Monitor System .....	10-41
Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation .....	10-42
Tyre Inspection .....	10-45
Tyre Rotation .....	10-46
When It Is Time for New Tyres .....	10-48
Buying New Tyres .....	10-48
Different Size Tyres and Wheels .....	10-50
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance .....	10-51

## 10-2 Vehicle Care

---

Wheel Replacement .....	10-51
Tyre Chains .....	10-52
If a Tyre Goes Flat .....	10-53
<b>Jump Starting</b>	
Jump Starting .....	10-53
<b>Towing the Vehicle</b>	
Towing the Vehicle .....	10-56
Recreational Vehicle Towing .....	10-57
<b>Appearance Care</b>	
Exterior Care .....	10-59
Interior Care .....	10-64
Floor Mats .....	10-67

### General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

### Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like anti-lock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorise the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* on page 3-30.

## Vehicle Checks

### Doing Your Own Service Work

#### Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Airbag System Check* on page 3-31.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed.

#### Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

## Bonnet

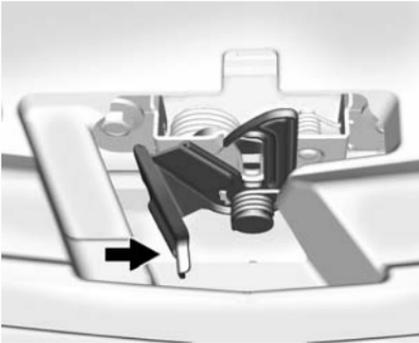
To open the bonnet:



1. Pull the bonnet release handle inside the vehicle. It is on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

## 10-4 Vehicle Care

---

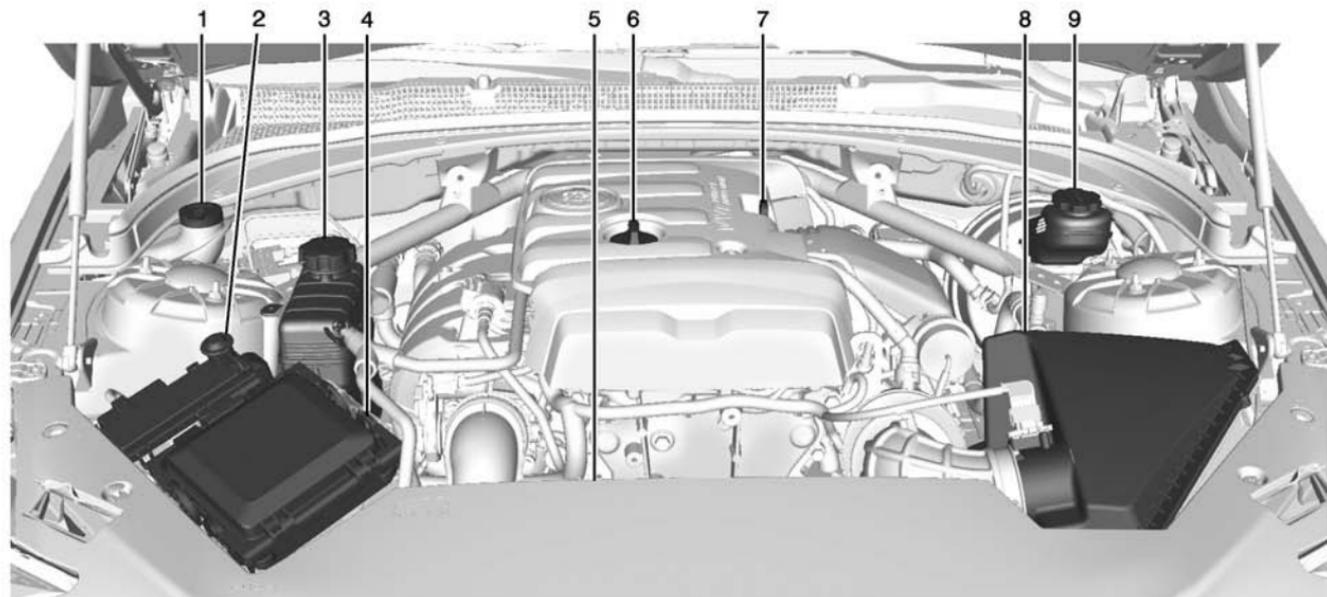


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and move the secondary bonnet release lever toward the right side of the vehicle.
3. Lift the bonnet.

To close the bonnet:

Before closing the bonnet, be sure all filler caps are on properly. Then, bring the bonnet from full open to within 152 mm (6 in) of the closed position. Pause, then push the front centre of the bonnet with a swift, firm motion to fully close the bonnet.

## Engine Compartment Overview



## 10-6 Vehicle Care

---

1. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-17*.
2. Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Battery on page 10-20*.
3. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-11*.
4. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-28*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 10-11*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.
7. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil on page 10-6*.
8. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-10*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes on page 10-17* and *Hydraulic Clutch on page 10-10*.

### Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 10-8*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

### Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil sump. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.



#### Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

### When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

 **Caution**

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when done.

### Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

#### Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos2™ approved certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements for the vehicle should have the dexos2 approved certification mark. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos2 specification.



### **Caution**

Failure to use the recommended engine oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Check with your dealer or service provider on whether the oil is approved to the dexos2 specification.

### **Viscosity Grade**

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

**Cold Temperature Operation:** If in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below  $-29^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct

specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section for more information.

### **Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes**

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### **What to Do with Used Oil**

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags

containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer’s warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

## **Engine Oil Life System**

### **When to Change Engine Oil**

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-33*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See your dealer for service.

See REMAINING OIL LIFE under *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24* for information on the engine oil life monitor.

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

### How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.

A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this

procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact the dealer for additional information.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

## Manual Gearbox Fluid

### How to Check Manual Gearbox Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual gearbox fluid level.

A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5* for the proper fluid to use.

### Hydraulic Clutch

For vehicles with a manual transmission, it is not necessary to regularly check brake/clutch fluid unless there is a leak suspected. Adding fluid will not correct a leak. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

#### When to Check and What to Use



The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has either a symbol or text specifying the type of brake fluid. The common brake/clutch fluid reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5 for reservoir location.

#### How to Check and Add Fluid

Visually check the brake/clutch fluid reservoir to make sure the fluid level is at the MIN (minimum) line on the side of the reservoir. The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid system should be closed and sealed.

Do not remove the cap to check the fluid level or to top off the fluid level. Remove the cap only when necessary to add the proper fluid until the level reaches the MIN line.

#### Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is located in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5 for location.

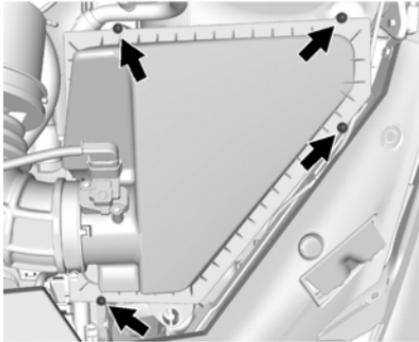
#### When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals. See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 11-1. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

#### How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

To inspect the engine air cleaner/filter, remove the filter from the vehicle and lightly shake the filter to release loose dust and dirt. If the filter remains covered with dirt, a new filter is required.

To inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter:



1. Remove the four screws and lift the cover out of the assembly.
2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Lower the cover and secure with the four screws.

See *Scheduled Maintenance* on page 11-1 for replacement intervals.

**Warning**

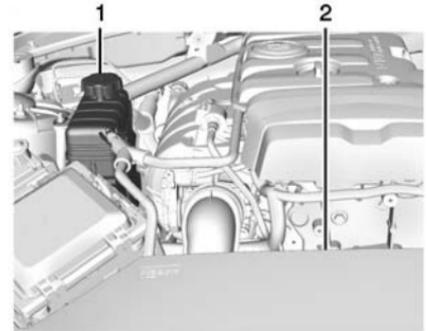
Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

**Caution**

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

**Cooling System**

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)

**Warning**

An electric engine cooling fan under the bonnet can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underbonnet electric fan.

### Warning

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

### Caution

Using coolant other than DEX-COOL<sup>®</sup> can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner. Any repairs would not be covered by the

(Continued)

### Caution (Continued)

vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1* and *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-15*.

## What to Use

### Warning

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to -37°C (-34°F), outside temperature.

- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminium parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

 **Caution**

If improper coolant mixture, inhibitors, or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the engine could overheat and be damaged. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack engine cooling parts. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only the proper mixture of engine coolant for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5.*

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the refuse, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorised service centre, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

**Checking Coolant**

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

It is normal to see coolant moving in the upper coolant hose return line when the engine is running. It is also normal to see bubbles entering the surge tank through the small hose.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down.

If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the COLD FILL line, add a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

If no coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank, add coolant as follows:

**How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank**

 **Caution**

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

If no problem is found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the bottom of the fill neck, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and

## 10-14 Vehicle Care

DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it.

### Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool.

### Warning

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

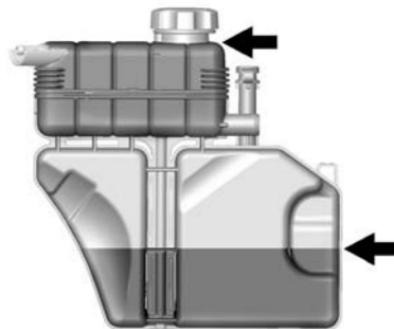
for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

### Caution

In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

### Warning

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.



1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap from the top chamber when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.

2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it. Open the surge tank service port cap to the lower chamber
3. Fill the surge tank top chamber with the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture to the bottom of the fill neck. The top chamber needs to be completely full. Fill the surge tank bottom chamber through the service port to approximately half.

4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off and the surge tank service port cap open, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank top chamber may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture to the surge tank top chamber until the level reaches the bottom of the fill neck.

5. Replace the surge tank pressure cap tightly and close the surge tank service port cap.

 **Caution**

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Check the level in the surge tank top and bottom chambers when the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper levels, repeat Steps 1–3 and reinstall the pressure cap and close the service port. If the coolant still is not at the proper levels when the system cools down again, see your dealer.

### Engine Overheating

The vehicle has a gauge and an indicator to warn of the engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* on page 5-11 and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* on page 5-20.

If the decision is made not to lift the bonnet when this warning appears, get service help right away.

If the decision is made to lift the bonnet, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

## 10-16 Vehicle Care

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

### **Caution**

Running the engine without coolant may cause damage or a fire. Vehicle damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### **If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment**

#### **Warning**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the bonnet. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down.

(Continued)

#### **Warning (Continued)**

Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the bonnet.

If you keep driving when the engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

### **If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment**

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or Neutral for a manual gearbox, and let the engine idle.

If the temperature overheat gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

## Washer Fluid

### What to Use

When windscreen washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

### Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* on page 10-5 for reservoir location.

#### Caution

- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windscreen washer. It can damage the windscreen washer system and paint.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution

(Continued)

#### Caution (Continued)

to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

## Brakes

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

### **Warning**

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

### **Caution**

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tyres are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the

proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-2*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

### **Brake Pedal Travel**

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

### **Brake Adjustment**

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

### **Replacing Brake System Parts**

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get

new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes - for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

### **Brake Fluid**



The brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-5* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The brake fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake/clutch hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake/clutch hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top up the brake/clutch fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

### Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

### Checking Brake Fluid

The brake/clutch fluid can be checked without taking off the cap by looking at the brake/clutch fluid reservoir.

The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have the brake/clutch hydraulic system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system, make sure the level is above MIN but not over the MAX mark.

When the brake/clutch fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* on page 5-16.

### What to Add

Use only new GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* on page 11-5.

Always clean the brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

### Warning

With the wrong kind of fluid in the brake/clutch hydraulic system, the brakes might not work well. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake/clutch fluid.

 **Caution**

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake/clutch hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.
- If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.

**Battery**

The battery is in the boot, behind the trim panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.



 **Warning**

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a torch.

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

 **Warning**

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

After a power loss, such as disconnecting the battery or removing the maxi fuses in the power distribution fuse block, the following steps must be performed to calibrate the electronic throttle control. If this is not done, the engine will not run properly.

1. Turn the ignition on but do not start the engine.

2. Leave the ignition on for at least three minutes so that the electronic throttle control will cycle and relearn its home position.
3. Turn the ignition off.
4. Start and run the engine for at least 30 seconds.

### Vehicle Storage

**Infrequent Usage:** Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

**Extended Storage:** Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

### All-Wheel Drive

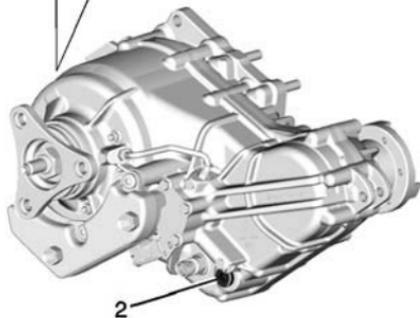
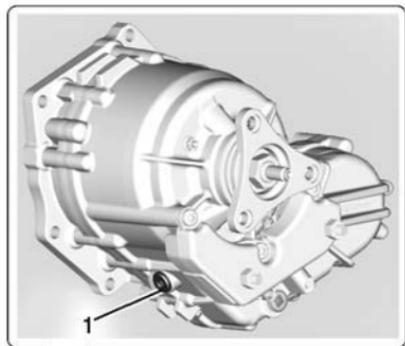
If the vehicle is equipped with All-Wheel-Drive (AWD), this is an additional system that needs lubrication.

### Transfer Case

#### When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the transfer case fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

### How to Check Lubricant



1. Fill Plug
2. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug hole, on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the fill plug.

#### What to Use

Refer to *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1* to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

### Starter Switch Check



#### Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Apply both the parking brake and the regular brake.

Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.

3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

For manual gearbox vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer for service.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

### Warning

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Apply the parking brake. Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the gear lever out of P (Park) with

normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

## Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

### Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, apply the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot

pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.

- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

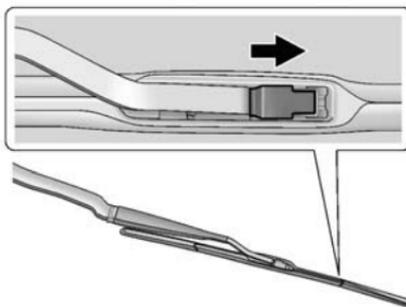
### Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 11-7*.

To replace the windscreen wiper blade:

1. Pull the windscreen wiper assembly away from the windscreen.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the catch open, pull the wiper blade down towards the windscreen far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.

4. Remove the wiper blade.

Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windscreen when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windscreen. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windscreen.

5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

### Windscreen Replacement

The windscreen is part of the HUD system. If the vehicle has to have the windscreen replaced, get one that is designed for HUD or the HUD image may look out of focus.

## Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp alignment has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp alignment may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs* on page 10-27.

For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

## Halogen Bulbs

### Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

## High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

### Warning

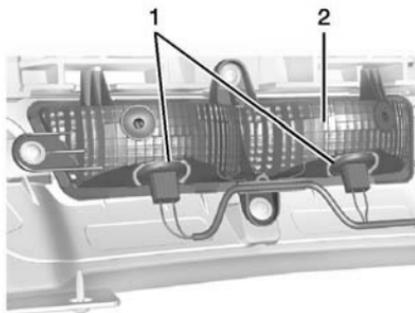
The high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

## LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

## Back-Up Lamps



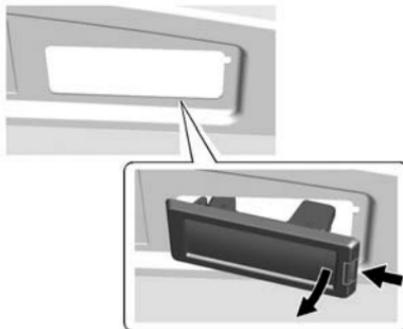
1. Reversing Bulb Socket
2. Reversing Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

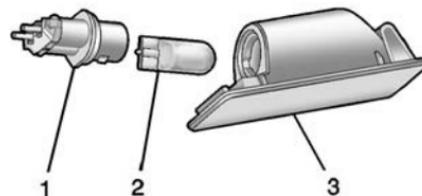
1. Reach under the rear fascia and locate the reversing lamp assembly.
2. Remove the bulb socket (1) by turning anticlockwise and pulling straight out of the lamp assembly (2).
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.

4. Install the new bulb in the bulb socket.
5. Install the bulb socket by turning clockwise.

## Number Plate Lamp



Lamp Assembly



Bulb Assembly

1. Bulb Socket
2. Bulb
3. Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Push the lamp assembly (3) toward the centre of the vehicle.
2. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove.
3. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).

4. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Push the lamp assembly back into position until the release tab locks into place.

### Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Reverse Light	921 (W16W)
Number Plate Lamp	W5W LL

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

## Electrical System

### Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

### Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

### Windscreen Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windscreen wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windscreen before using the windscreen wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

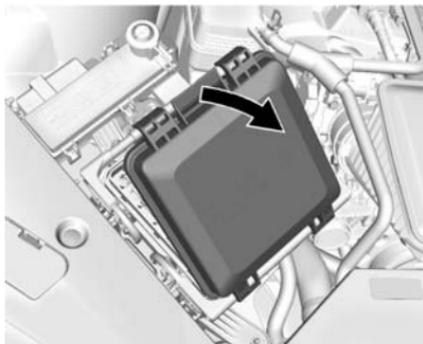
To check a fuse, look at the silver-coloured band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* on page 10-28, *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* on page 10-31, and *Rear Compartment Fuse Block* on page 10-34.

## Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The underbonnet fuse block is on the passenger side of the engine compartment.



Lift the fuse block cover to access the fuses.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.

### Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



Number	Usage
1	Not Used
2	Not Used
3	Not Used
4	Body Control Module 6
5	Not Used
6	Driver Power Seat
7	Not Used
*8	Headlamp Washer Relay
9	Not Used
10	Not Used
11	Not Used
12	Not Used
13	Passenger Power Seat
14	Body Control Module 5
15	Passive Entry/ Passive Start

**10-30 Vehicle Care**

Number	Usage
16	Not Used
*17	Headlamp Washer
18	Not Used
19	Antilock Brake System Pump
20	Antilock Brake System Valve
*21	AIR Pump
22	Not Used
23	Wiper Control Relay
24	Wiper Speed Relay
25	Engine Control Module Relay
*26	AIR Pump Relay
27	Spare/Heated Seat 2
28	Body Control Module 1/Spare

Number	Usage
*29	AFS AHL/ Pedestrian Protection
30	Passenger Window Switch
31	Body Control Module 7
32	Sunroof
33	Front Wiper
34	AOS Display/MIL Ignition
35	Rear Electrical Centre Ignition
36	Spare PT Fuse
37	Oxygen Sensor
38	Ignition Coils/ Injectors
39	Ignition Coils/ Injectors/Spare
40	Engine Control Module

Number	Usage
41	Fuel Heater
*42	AIR Solenoid Relay
43	Washer
44	Rear Washer Relay
45	Front Washer Relay
46	Not Used
47	Instrument Panel Body Ignition
48	Fuel System Control Module Ignition
49	Heated Steering Wheel
*50	Steering Column Lock
*51	Coolant Pump
*52	Coolant Pump Relay
53	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch

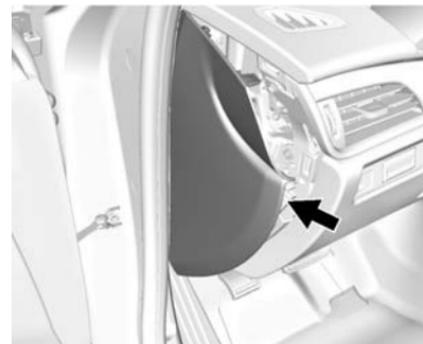
Number	Usage
*54	AIR Solenoid
55	Transmission Control Module/ Spare
*56	Headlamp Dipped Relay
57	Headlamp main Relay
58	Starter
59	Starter Relay
60	Run/Crank Relay
*61	Vacuum Pump Relay
62	Air Conditioning Control Relay
*63	Adaptive Headlamp Levelling
*64	Left Main Intensity Discharge Headlamp

Number	Usage
*65	Right Main Intensity Discharge Headlamp
66	Headlamp Main Left/Right
67	Horn
68	Horn Relay
69	Cooling Fan
70	Aero Shutter
71	Transmission Control Module Ignition
72	Engine Control Module Ignition
*73	Brake Vacuum Pump
74	Not Used

\* Optional

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is in the end of the driver side of the instrument panel.



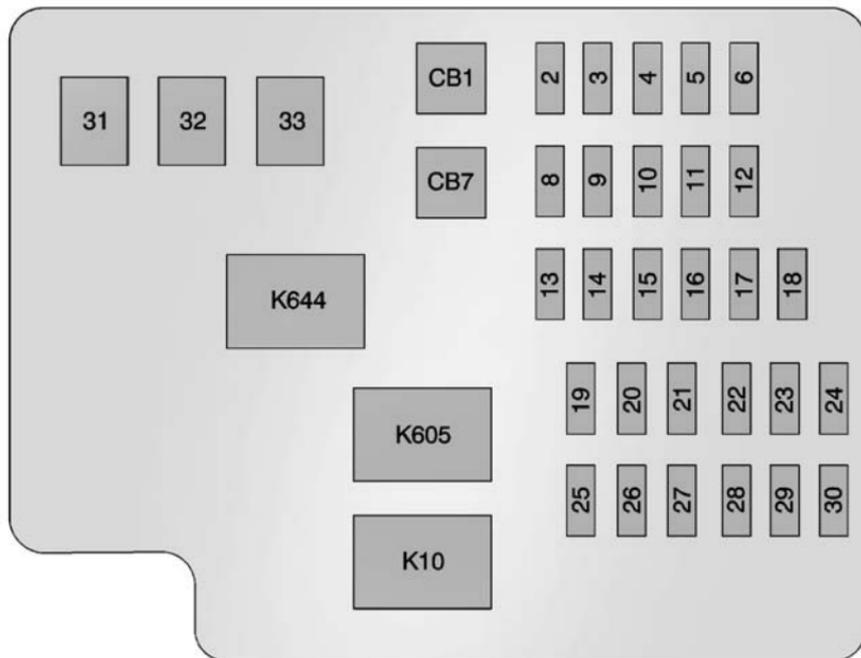
To access the fuses, remove the end panel by gently prying with a plastic tool near each clip, beginning at the point shown.

## 10-32 Vehicle Care



To install the end cover, insert the tabs on the back of the cover into the slots in the instrument panel at the points shown. Align the clips with the slots in the instrument panel, and press the cover into place.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.



MiniFuses	Usage
2	Spare
3	Electric Steering Column Lock
4	Data Link Connector
5	Heater, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Control
6	Tilt and Telescope Steering Column
8	Spare
9	Spare
10	Shunt
11	Spare
12	Spare
13	Spare
14	Spare
15	Spare
16	Spare
17	Spare

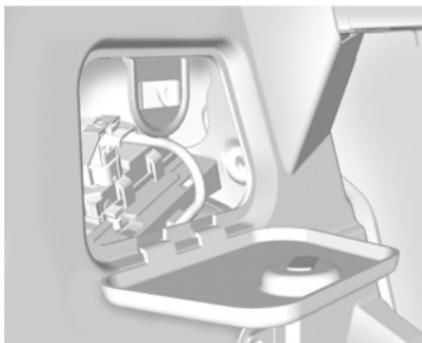
MiniFuses	Usage
18	Spare
19	Spare
20	Spare
21	Spare
22	Sensing Diagnostic Module/Automatic Occupant Sensing
23	Radio/DVD/Heater, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning
24	Display
25	Heated Steering Wheel
26	Spare
27	Switches
28	Spare
29	Spare
30	Spare

J Case Fuses	Usage
31	Spare
32	Spare
33	Front Heater, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Blower

Circuit Breakers	Usage
CB1	Retained Accessory Power/Accessory Power Outlet Power
CB7	Spare

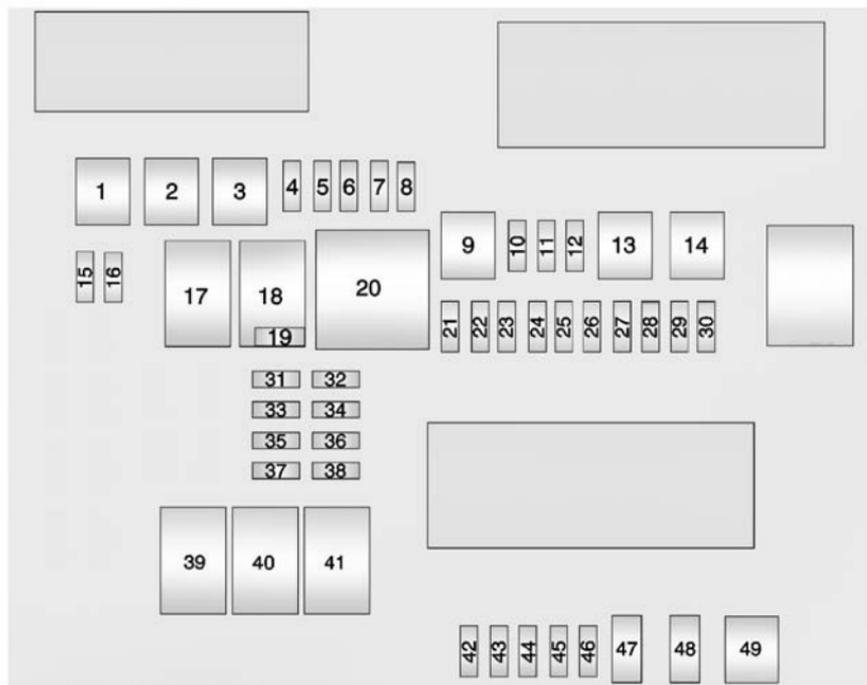
Relays	Usage
K10	Retained Accessory Power/Accessory
K605	Logistics
K644	Spare

### Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is behind a cover on the driver side of the rear compartment.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.



Number	Usage
1	Stop/Start
2	Left Window
3	Body Control Module 8
4	A/C Inverter
5	Passive Entry Passive Start Battery 1
6	Body Control Module 4
7	Heated Mirrors
8	Amplifier
9	Rear Window Demister
10	Not Used
11	Trailer Connector
12	OnStar (If Equipped)
13	Right Window

Number	Usage
14	Electric Parking Brake
15	Not Used
16	Boot Release
17	Run Relay
18	Logistics Relay
19	Logistics Fuse
20	Rear Window Demister Relay
21	Mirror Window Module
22	Not Used
23	Canister Vent
24	Body Control Module 2
25	Rear Vision Camera
26	Not Used
27	SBZA/LDW/EOCM
28	Trailer/Sunshade

Number	Usage
29	Not Used
30	Semi-Active Damping System
31	Transfer Case Control Module
32	Theft Module/ Universal Garage Door Opener/Rain Sensor
33	UPA
34	Radio/DVD
35	Not Used
36	Trailer
37	Fuel Pump/Fuel System Control Module
38	Not Used
39	Not Used
40	Not Used
41	Not Used

Number	Usage
42	Memory Seat Module
43	Body Control Module 3
44	Not Used
45	Battery Regulated Voltage Control
46	Engine Control Module Battery
47	Not Used
48	Not Used
49	Trailer Module

## Wheels and Tyres

### Tyres

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tyres made by a leading tyre manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tyre warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tyre manufacturer.

#### Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tyres are dangerous.
- Overloading the tyres can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout

(Continued)

#### Warning (Continued)

and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*.

- Underinflated tyres pose the same danger as overloaded tyres. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tyres frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold.
- Overinflated tyres are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact - such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tyres at the recommended pressure.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Worn or old tyres can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tyres that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tyres can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorised tyre service centre should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tyres.
- Do not spin the tyres in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tyres to explode.

See *Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation on page 10-40* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

**All-Season Tyres**

This vehicle may come with all-season tyres. These tyres are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tyres designed to GM's specific tyre performance criteria have a TPC specification code moulded onto the sidewall. Original equipment all-season tyres can be identified by the last two characters of this TPC code, which will be "MS."

Consider installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tyres provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of

traction or performance as winter tyres on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tyres on page 10-37*.

**Winter Tyres**

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tyres. Winter tyres are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tyre availability and proper tyre selection. Also, see *Buying New Tyres on page 10-48*.

With winter tyres, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tyres, be alert for changes in the vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tyres:

- Use tyres of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.

## 10-38 Vehicle Care

- Use only radial ply tyres of the same size, load range and speed rating as the original equipment tyres.

Winter tyres with the same speed rating as the original equipment tyres may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tyres. If winter tyres with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tyre's maximum speed capability.

### Run-Flat Tyres

This vehicle, when new, may have had run-flat tyres. There is no spare tyre, no tyre changing equipment and no place to store a tyre in the vehicle.

The vehicle also has a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) that indicates a loss of tyre pressure in any of the tyres.

#### Warning

If the low tyre warning light displays on the instrument cluster, the handling capabilities will be reduced during severe manoeuvres. Driving too fast could cause loss of control and you or others could be injured. Do not drive over 90 km/h (55 mph) when the low tyre warning light is displayed. Drive cautiously and check the tyre pressures as soon as possible.

Run-flat tyres can be driven on with no air pressure. There is no need to stop on the side of the road to change the tyre. Continue driving; however, do not drive too far or too fast. Driving on the tyre may not be possible if there is permanent damage. To prevent permanent damage, keep speed below 80 km/h (50 mph). With a light load the vehicle can be driven up to 100 km (60 mi); with a moderate load 80 km

(50 mi); and a heavy load 45 km (25 mi). As soon as possible, contact the nearest authorised GM or run-flat servicing facility for inspection and repair or replacement.

When driving on a deflated run-flat tyre, avoid potholes and other road hazards that could damage the tyre and/or wheel beyond repair. When a tyre has been damaged, or driven any distance while deflated, check with an authorised run-flat tyre service centre to determine whether the tyre can be repaired or should be replaced. To maintain the run-flat feature, all replacement tyres must be run-flat tyres.

To locate the nearest GM or run-flat servicing facility, call Customer Assistance.

The valve stems on run-flat tyres have sensors that are part of the TPMS. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor System on page 10-41*. These sensors contain batteries that are designed to last for 10 years under

normal driving conditions. See your dealer for wheel or sensor replacement.

 **Caution**

Using liquid sealants can damage the tyre valves and tyre pressure monitor sensors in the run-flat tyres. This damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not use liquid sealants in run-flat tyres.

## Summer Tyres

This vehicle may come with high performance summer tyres. These tyres have a special tread and compound that are optimised for maximum dry and wet road performance. This special tread and compound will decrease performance in cold climates, and on ice and snow. We recommend installing winter tyres on the vehicle if frequent driving in cold

temperatures or on snow or ice covered roads is expected. See *Winter Tyres* on page 10-37.

## Tyre Pressure

Tyres need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

 **Caution**

Neither tyre underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tyres, or tyres that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tyre overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

Overinflated tyres, or tyres that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The Tyre and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tyres and the correct cold tyre inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight the vehicle can carry, and an example of the Tyre and Loading Information label, see *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*. How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

### When to Check

Check the tyres once a month or more.

### How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check the tyre pressure. Proper tyre inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tyre. Check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold, meaning the vehicle

has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get the pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary.

If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve to release air. Re-check the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture and prevent leaks.

## Tyre Pressure for High-Speed Operation



Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts an additional strain on tyres. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat build-up and can cause sudden tyre failure. You could have a crash and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tyres require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions are such that a vehicle can be driven at high speeds, make sure the tyres are rated for high-speed operation, in excellent condition, and set to the correct cold tyre inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P225/45R17 and 225/40R18 92V size tyres require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold inflation pressure to 280 kPa (41 psi).

Vehicles with 225/40RF18 88W and 255/35RF18 90W size tyres require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold inflation pressure to 300 kPa (44 psi).

Return the tyres to the recommended cold tyre inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10* and *Tyre Pressure on page 10-39*.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor System



### Caution

Modifications made to the Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorised service facility may void authorisation to use the system.

The Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tyre pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tyres and transmit tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the

vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or

wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42* for additional information.

See *Declaration of Conformity on page 13-1*.

### **Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation**

This vehicle may have a Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tyre pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tyre and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tyre and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in

the tyres and transmit the tyre pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tyre pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tyre pressure warning light located on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure shown on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tyre displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The low tyre pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tyres are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tyre

pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24*.

The low tyre pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tyre and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tyres and the correct inflation pressure for the tyres when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10*, for an example of the Tyre and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tyre Pressure on page 10-39*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tyre pressure condition but it does not replace normal tyre maintenance. See *Tyre Inspection on page 10-45*, *Tyre Rotation on page 10-46* and *Tyres on page 10-36*.

 **Caution**

Tyre sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tyre sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tyre sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tyre sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

**TPMS Malfunction Light and Message**

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tyre warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tyres has been replaced with the spare tyre. The spare tyre does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tyre is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.

- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tyres. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tyres or wheels do not match the original equipment tyres or wheels. Tyres and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tyres on page 10-48*.

- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tyre condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

### **TPMS Sensor Matching Process**

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tyre/wheel position after rotating the vehicle's tyres or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tyre with a road tyre containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tyre/wheel positions,

using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tyre, passenger side front tyre, passenger side rear tyre, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool.

You have two minutes to match the first tyre/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tyre/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Place the vehicle power mode in ON/RUN/START. See *Ignition Positions on page 9-15*.
3. Make sure the Tyre Pressure info display option is turned on. The info displays on the DIC can be turned on and off through the Settings menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24*.

4. Use the five-way DIC control on the right side of the steering wheel to scroll to the Tyre Pressure screen under the DIC info page. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-24*.
5. Press and hold the SEL button located in the centre of the five-way DIC control.  
The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and the TYRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
6. Start with the driver side front tyre.
7. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tyre and wheel position.

8. Proceed to the passenger side front tyre, and repeat the procedure in Step 7.
9. Proceed to the passenger side rear tyre, and repeat the procedure in Step 7.
10. Proceed to the driver side rear tyre, and repeat the procedure in Step 7. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tyre, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TYRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
11. Press STOP to turn the ignition off.
12. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tyre and Loading Information label.

## Tyre Inspection

We recommend that the tyres, including the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tyre if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tyre can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tyre's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump, bulge, or split.

## 10-46 Vehicle Care

---

- The tyre has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

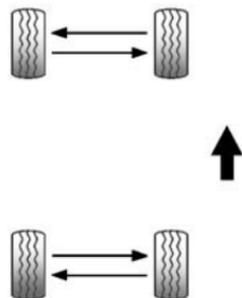
### Tyre Rotation

If the vehicle has non-directional tyres, they should be rotated at the intervals specified in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 11-1*.

Tyres are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tyres. The first rotation is the most important.

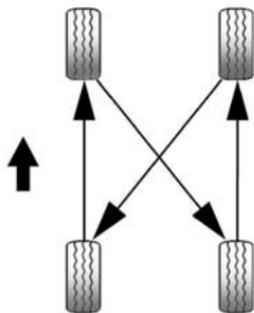
Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tyres as soon as possible, check for proper tyre inflation pressure, and check for damaged tyres or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tyres on page 10-48* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-51*.

Directional tyres should not be rotated. Each tyre and wheel should be used only in the position it is in. Directional tyres will have an arrow on the tyre indicating the proper direction of rotation or will have “left” or “right” moulded on the sidewall.



Use this rotation pattern if the vehicle has different size tyres on the front and rear and they are non-directional.

Different tyre sizes should not be rotated front to rear.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating tyres of the same size installed on all four wheel positions.

If the vehicle has a compact spare tyre, do not include it in the tyre rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tyres to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label after the tyres have been rotated. See *Tyre Pressure* on page 10-39 and *Vehicle Load Limits* on page 9-10.

Reset the Tyre Pressure Monitor System. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation* on page 10-42.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications* on page 12-2.

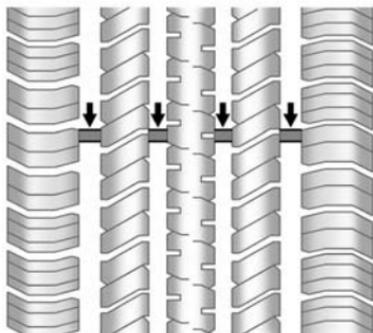
### Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the centre of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tyre rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

### When It Is Time for New Tyres

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tyres.



Tread wear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tyres. Tread wear indicators appear when the tyres have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tyre Inspection* on page 10-45 and *Tyre Rotation* on page 10-46.

The rubber in tyres ages over time. This also applies to the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast ageing takes place. GM recommends that tyres, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. The tyre manufacturer date is the last four digits of the DOT Tyre Identification Number (TIN) which is moulded into one side of the tyre sidewall. The first two digits represent the week (01–52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

### Vehicle Storage

Tyres age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to

slow ageing. This area should be free of grease, petrol, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tyres that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tyres or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tyres.

### Buying New Tyres

GM has developed and matched specific tyres for the vehicle. The original equipment tyres installed were designed to meet General Motors Tyre Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tyres are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tyres with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tyre pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is moulded onto the tyre's sidewall near the tyre size. If the tyres have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow.

GM recommends replacing worn tyres in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tyres will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tyres are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done,

all four tyres should wear out at about the same time. See *Tyre Rotation* on page 10-46 for information on proper tyre rotation. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tyres, place the new tyres on the rear axle.

 **Warning**

Tyres could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tyre could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorised tyre service centre should mount or dismount the tyres.

Winter tyres with the same speed rating as the original equipment tyres may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tyres. Never exceed the winter tyre's maximum

speed capability when using winter tyres with a lower speed rating.

 **Warning**

Never drive faster than the speed the tyres are rated, regardless of the legal speed limit. When frequently driving the vehicle at high speeds and/or for prolonged periods of time, check with your vehicle/tyre dealer for the proper type of tyres to use for the specific driving and weather conditions.

 **Warning**

Mixing tyres of different sizes (other than those originally installed on the vehicle), brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tyre on all four wheels.

 **Warning**

Using bias-ply tyres on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tyre and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tyres with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tyres must be replaced with a tyre that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tyres.

Vehicles that have a tyre pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tyres are installed. See *Tyre Pressure Monitor Operation on page 10-42*.

The Tyre and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tyres on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits on page 9-10* for the label location and more information about the Tyre and Loading Information label.

**Different Size Tyres and Wheels**

If wheels or tyres are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tyres, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock

brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

 **Warning**

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tyres not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tyre systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tyres on page 10-48* and *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

## Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

The tyres and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tyre life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tyre balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tyre wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tyres and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced.

If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminium wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, and offset, and should be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tyre Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

### Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tyres can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing

(Continued)

### Warning (Continued)

a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

### Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlight aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tyre clearance to the body and chassis.

### Warning

Never use oil or grease on studs or the threads of the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts might come loose and the wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

### **Warning**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to a crash. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.

### **Caution**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and disc damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

## Used Replacement Wheels

### **Warning**

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

## Tyre Chains

Tyre chains are only permitted on the rear tyres of P225/45R17 size tyres.

Tyre chains are not permitted on 225/40R18 or 255/35RF18 size tyres.

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides, including the chain lock.

Drive slowly and follow the cable manufacturer's instructions. If the cables contact the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

### **Caution**

Do not install traction devices on the front tyres.

### **Caution**

To help avoid damage to the vehicle, drive slowly, do not spin the wheels, and readjust or remove the device if it contacts the vehicle.

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tyre to blow out while driving, especially if the tyres are maintained properly. If air goes out of a tyre, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. See *Tyres on page 10-36* for additional information. But if there ever is a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tyre fails, the flat tyre creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

The vehicle has no spare tyre, no tyre changing equipment and no place to store a tyre.

If the vehicle has run-flat tyres, there is no need to stop on the side of the road to change a flat tyre. See *Run-Flat Tyres on page 10-38*.

### Warning

Special tools and procedures are required to service a run-flat tyre. If these special tools and procedures are not used, injury or vehicle damage may occur. Always be sure the proper tools and procedures, as described in the service manual, are used.

## Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery on page 10-20*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

### Warning

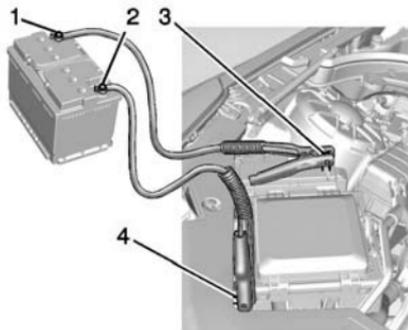
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

### Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Good Battery Positive Post
2. Good Battery Negative Post
3. Discharged Battery Positive Post

### 4. Discharged Battery Negative Grounding Point

The jump start positive post (1) and negative post (2) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The jump start positive post (3) and the negative grounding point (4) for the discharged battery are on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a red cover. Remove the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

### Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.

3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual gearbox. See *Shifting Into Park* on page 9-19 with an automatic transmission.

### Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Set the ignition to OFF. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

 **Warning**

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underbonnet electric fan.

 **Warning**

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a torch if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low,  
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

 **Warning**

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.

6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the good battery.
8. Connect the other end of the black negative (-) cable to the negative (-) grounding point for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

 **Caution**

If the jump leads are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jump leads in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

**Jump Lead Removal**

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jump leads.

**Towing the Vehicle**

 **Caution**

Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not lash or hook to the chassis components — including the front and rear subframes, suspension control arms, and links — during towing and recovery of a disabled vehicle, or when securing the vehicle. Use the proper nylon strap harnesses around the tyres to secure the vehicle.

Have the vehicle towed on a flatbed car carrier. A wheel lift tow truck could damage the vehicle.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Use the tow eye for towing a disabled vehicle or loading it onto a flatbed car carrier. The tow eye should not be used to recover a vehicle from an off road situation.

 **Caution**

Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Carefully open the cover in the fascia by using the small notch that conceals the tow eye socket.

Install the tow eye into the socket by turning it clockwise until it stops. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

To tow the vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes, such as behind a motor home, see “Recreational Vehicle Towing” in this section.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

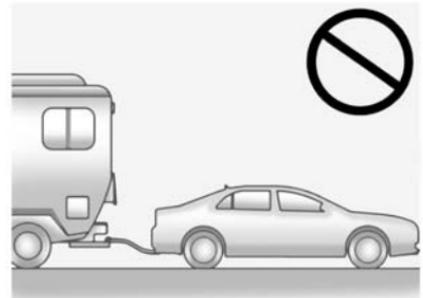
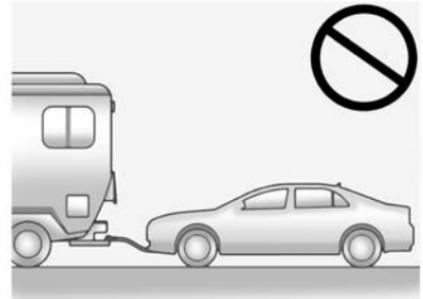
Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle - such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.

- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

## Dinghy Towing

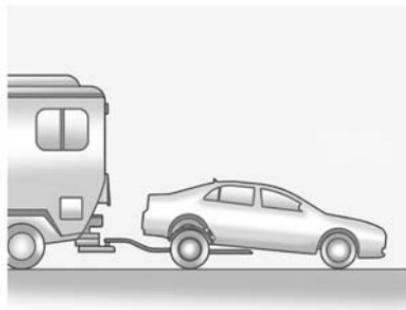


 **Caution**

If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

The vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If a rear-wheel-drive vehicle must be towed, a dolly or a trailer should be used. If an all-wheel-drive vehicle must be towed, a trailer should be used. See “Dolly Towing” following for more information.

**Dolly Towing  
(Rear-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)**

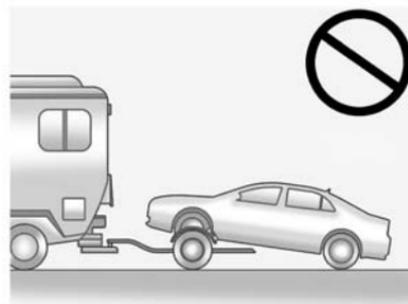


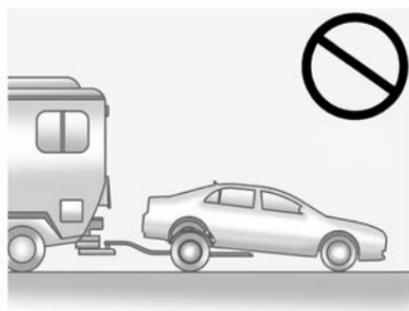
Use the following procedure to dolly tow a rear-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Put the rear wheels on the dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Manual)* on page 9-28 or *Parking Brake (Electric)* on page 9-29.

4. Put the vehicle in P (Park).
5. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the dolly.
6. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

**Dolly Towing (All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)**





**⚠ Caution**

Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.

All-wheel-drive vehicles can only be towed with all four wheels on a trailer.

## Appearance Care

### Exterior Care

#### Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

#### Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

**⚠ Caution**

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

**⚠ Caution**

Avoid using high-pressure washers closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

The  symbol is on any underbonnet compartment electrical centre that should not be power washed. This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

### Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

### Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a base coat/clear coat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a base coat/clear coat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

### Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Mouldings

### Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal mouldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal mouldings on the vehicle are aluminium. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the moulding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use a cleaning solution approved for aluminium. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the mouldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use chrome cleaners.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the moulding finish.

### **Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses, Emblems, Decals and Stripes**

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses and emblems. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating.

Use only lukewarm water, a soft cloth, and mild car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Do not clean or wipe them while they are dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.

- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

 **Caution**

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

 **Caution**

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

### Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen when washing the vehicle.

### Windscreen and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windscreen with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windscreen washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windscreen thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Insects, road grime, sap, and a build-up of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

### Weatherstrips

Apply Dielectric silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5*.

### Tyres

Use a stiff brush with tyre cleaner to clean the tyres.

#### **Caution**

Using petroleum-based tyre dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tyres. When applying a tyre dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

### Wheels and Trim - Aluminium or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

#### **Caution**

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

 **Caution**

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminium or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminium or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tyre cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year. Inspect the power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually

check constant velocity joints, rubber boots, and axle seals for leaks.

### Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, bonnet hinges, tailgate hinges, and the fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

### Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, Spring and Autumn, use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

### Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion

material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

### Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

### Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolourations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See "Finish Care" previously in this section.

### Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soiling. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer colour to home furnishings can also permanently transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners directly on any switches or controls. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to

remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per

3.8 L (1 gal) of water.

A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.

- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

### Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.



#### Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

### Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

### Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

### Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soil, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colourfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.

3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

### Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

 **Caution**

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the warranty.

### Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

 **Caution**

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

 **Caution**

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

## Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

### Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

## Floor Mats

### Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

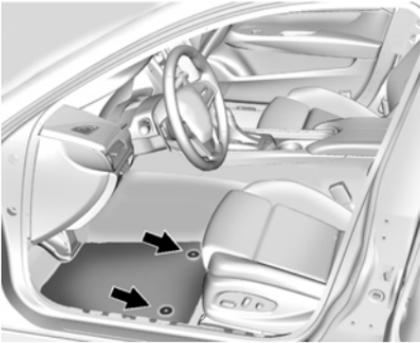
- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended

that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

The driver side floor mat is held in place by button-type retainers.

### Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats



1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock the retainers and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place.

## Service and Maintenance

### General Information

General Information ..... 11-1

### Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance ..... 11-1

### Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and  
Lubricants ..... 11-5

Maintenance Replacement  
Parts ..... 11-7

## General Information

It is essential that your vehicle receives the maintenance outlined on the following pages to retain the safety, reliability and performance originally built into your vehicle.

When your odometer reaches the mileage indicated on the following pages, or the corresponding time interval has been reached, take your vehicle, preferably to an authorised dealer and/or repairer, who will provide the proper parts and service.

Once maintenance has been performed, have the authorised dealer and/or repairer fill out and stamp the appropriate box in this booklet to serve as your maintenance record which may be needed for warranty repairs. It will also show future owners how well your vehicle has been maintained.

## Scheduled Maintenance

### Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system might not indicate the need for vehicle service for more than a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed.

## 11-2 Service and Maintenance

---

### Inspection Every 15 000 km or 1 Year

- Change engine oil and filter. Reset oil life system.
- Engine coolant level check.
- Engine cooling system inspection. Visual inspection of hoses, pipes, fittings, and clamps and replacement, if needed.
- Windscreen washer fluid level check.
- Windscreen washer fluid level check.
- Windscreen wiper blade inspection for wear, cracking, or contamination and windscreen and wiper blade cleaning, if contaminated. Worn or damaged wiper blade replacement.
- Tyre inflation pressures check.
- Tyre wear inspection.
- Fluids visual leak check. A leak in any system must be repaired and the fluid level checked.
- Engine air cleaner filter inspection.
- Brake system inspection.
- Steering and suspension inspection. Visual inspection for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear.
- Body hinges and latches, key lock cylinders, folding seat hardware, and rear compartment, bonnet, and console door hinges and latches lubrication. More frequent lubrication may be required when the vehicle is exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth makes them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.
- Restraint system component check.
- Fuel system inspection for damage or leaks.
- Exhaust system and nearby heat shields inspection for loose or damaged components.
- Accelerator pedal check for damage, high effort, or binding.
- Bonnet/Deck lid/Tailgate/Lift glass Support Gas Strut Service: Visually inspect gas strut, if equipped, for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the gas strut. Contact your authorised repairer if service is required.
- Road Test. Check all systems for correct function/performance.
- To maintain air conditioning efficiency, have an authorised repairer check the system at least once each year.
- Automatic transmission shift lock control function check.

- Parking brake and automatic P (Park) mechanism check.
- Underbody flushing service.
- Tyre sealant and compressor kit (if equipped with tyre sealant and compressor kit), check sealant expiration date.

**Additional Maintenance Every 30 000 km or 2 Years**

In addition to the items listed under “Inspection every 15 000 km or 1 year” the following items should be carried out every 30 000 km or 2 years (whichever occurs first):

- Passenger compartment air filter — replace (if applicable).
- Engine Air Filter Replacement.
- All-wheel-drive vehicles only: Transfer case fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or

mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid.

Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

- Automatic transmission fluid change (severe service) for vehicles mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather, in hilly or mountainous terrain, when frequently towing a trailer, or used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

**Replace Every 2 Years**

Replace brake fluid every 2 years.

Note: All vehicles with rear-wheel drive — change driveline axle oil every 30 000 km, if vehicle is used for towing purposes.

**Additional Maintenance Every 72 000 km**

- Manual gearbox fluid change

**Additional Maintenance Every 84 000 km**

- Rear axle fluid — replace, if equipped with limited slip differential.

**Additional Maintenance Every 96 000 km**

- Spark plugs — replace

## 11-4 Service and Maintenance

---

### **Additional Maintenance Every 150 000 km or if Necessary**

- Automatic transmission fluid and filter change
- All-wheel drive only: Transfer case fluid change (normal service). Check vent hose at transfer case for kinks and proper installation. Check to be sure vent hose is unobstructed, clear, and free of debris. During any maintenance, if a power washer is used to clean mud and dirt from the underbody, care should be taken to not directly spray the transfer case output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and should be replaced.

### **Additional Maintenance Every 250 000 km or Every Five Years, Whichever Occurs First**

- Engine cooling system drain, flush and refill (or every five years, whichever occurs first).

### **Conditions Requiring More Frequent Maintenance (Severe Service)**

- Extreme temperatures
- Heavy city traffic
- Hilly or mountainous terrain
- Dusty, muddy or off-road conditions
- Commercial use or trailer towing
- Most trips less than 6 km

Note: All vehicles with rear-wheel drive — change driveline axle oil every 30 000 km, if vehicle is used for towing purposes.

## Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

### Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Use only engine oil licensed to the Dexos2™ specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco Dexos2 Synthetic Blend is recommended. See <i>Engine Oil</i> on page 10-6.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See <i>Engine Coolant</i> on page 10-12.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19299818).
Hydraulic Clutch System	DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19299818).
Windscreen Washer	Automotive windscreen washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Gearbox	See your dealer.
Transfer Case (All-Wheel Drive)	Transfer Case Fluid (GM Part No. 88861950).
Rear Axle (Non-Limited Slip Differential)	Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089).

## 11-6 Service and Maintenance

---

<b>Usage</b>	<b>Fluid/Lubricant</b>
Rear Axle (Limited Slip Differential)	DEXRON LS Gear 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88862624).
Rear Axle (All-Wheel Drive)	Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241).
Bonnet Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor and Release Pawl	Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 89021668) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Bonnet and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. 12345579).

## Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter	20857930	A3178C
Engine Oil Filter	12640445	PF64
Passenger Compartment Air Filter	13356916	CF185
Spark Plugs	12647827	41-125
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 55 cm (21.7 in)	22905714	-
Passenger Side – 45 cm (17.7 in)	25882578	-



## Technical Data

### Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) .....	12-1
Engine Identification .....	12-1
Service Parts Identification Label .....	12-1

### Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications .....	12-2
Engine Drive Belt Routing ...	12-4

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windscreen from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

## Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications* on page 12-2 for the vehicle's engine code.

### Service Parts Identification Label

This label, on the load floor under the spare tyre cover in the boot, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

### Vehicle Data

#### Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-5* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the bonnet. See your dealer for more information.	
Cooling System— Engine	7.6 L	8.0 qt
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine RWD	4.7 L	5.0 qt
2.0L L4 Engine AWD	5.7 L	6.0 qt
Fuel Tank	62.5 L	16.5 gal
Transfer Case - AWD	0.8 L	0.8 qt
Transmission Fluid (Pan Removal and Filter Replacement)		
6-Speed Automatic	6.0 L	6.4 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	140 N•m	100 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

**Engine Specifications**

Engine	VIN Code	Horsepower	Torque	Spark Plug Gap
2.0L L4 Engine	X	203 kW (272 hp)@ 5500 min <sup>-1</sup>	353 Nm (260 lb ft) @1800-5500 min <sup>-1</sup>	0.9 mm (0.035 in)

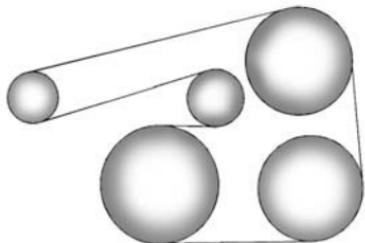
**Fuel Consumption and Emissions Information**

	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined
Manual Gearbox - RWD			
Carbon Dioxide (g/km)	279	152	199
Fuel Economy (L/100 km)	12.0	6.5	8.6
Automatic Transmission - RWD			
Carbon Dioxide (g/km)	269	145	191
Fuel Economy (L/100 km)	11.6	6.3	8.2
Automatic Transmission - AWD			
Carbon Dioxide (g/km)	278	147	195
Fuel Economy (L/100 km)	12.0	6.3	8.4

## 12-4 Technical Data

---

### Engine Drive Belt Routing



## Customer Information

### Customer Information

Declaration of Conformity .... 13-1

### Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and

Privacy ..... 13-1

Infotainment System ..... 13-2

Radio Frequency

Identification (RFID) ..... 13-2

## Customer Information Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC.

These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

## Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

### Event Data Recorders

### Data Storage Modules in the Vehicle

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events, and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems, or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g., filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g., number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Dysfunctions and defects in important system components.

## 13-2 Customer Information

---

- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g., inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental concerns (e.g., temperature).

This data is exclusively technical and helps identify and correct errors as well as optimise vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with this data.

If services are used (e.g., repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these dealers. After an error has been corrected, the data is deleted from the error storage module or constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which this technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person — possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g., vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

### Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

### Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Cadillac vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Cadillac system containing personal information.

**A**

Accessories and Modifications .....	10-2
Accessory Power .....	9-19
Active Emergency Braking System .....	1-16, 9-54
Adaptive Cruise Control .....	9-38
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) .....	6-5
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light .....	5-23
Add-On Electrical Equipment .....	9-63
Adjustments Lumbar, Front Seats .....	3-4
Thigh Support .....	3-4
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine .....	10-10
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment .....	8-7
Air Vents .....	8-6
Airbag System Check .....	3-31
How Does an Airbag Restrain? .....	3-24
Passenger Sensing System .....	3-26

Airbag System (cont'd) What Makes an Airbag Inflate? .....	3-24
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? .....	3-24
When Should an Airbag Inflate? .....	3-23
Where Are the Airbags? .....	3-21
Airbags Adding Equipment to the Vehicle .....	3-30
Passenger Status Indicator .....	5-13
Readiness Light .....	5-12
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles .....	3-30
System Check .....	3-19
Alarm Vehicle Security .....	2-14
Alert Side Blind Zone (SBZA) .....	9-56
All-Wheel Drive .....	9-27, 10-21
Anti-theft Locking System .....	2-16
Antilock Brake System (ABS) .....	9-27
Warning Light .....	5-18

Appearance Care Exterior .....	10-59
Interior .....	10-64
Armrest Storage .....	4-2
Assistance Systems for Driving .....	9-51
Assistance Systems for Parking and Reversing .....	9-47
Automatic Headlamp System .....	6-4
Transmission .....	9-22
Transmission Fluid .....	10-9
Automatic Transmission Manual Mode .....	9-24
Shift Lock Control Function Check .....	10-23

**B**

Battery .....	10-20
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver .....	6-9
Jump Starting .....	10-53
Power Protection .....	6-9
Voltage and Charging Messages .....	5-30

Blade Replacement, Wiper ... 10-24  
 Bonnet ..... 10-3  
 Boot ..... 2-12  
 Brake  
     System Warning Light ..... 5-16  
 Brakes ..... 10-17  
     Antilock ..... 9-27  
     Assist ..... 9-30  
     Fluid ..... 10-18  
     Parking ..... 9-28, 9-29  
     System Messages ..... 5-31  
 Braking ..... 9-2  
 Braking System  
     Active Emergency ..... 1-16  
 Bulb Replacement ..... 10-27  
     Halogen Bulbs ..... 10-25  
     Headlamp Aiming ..... 10-25  
     Headlamps ..... 10-25  
     High Intensity Discharge  
         (HID) Lighting ..... 10-25  
     Number Plate Lamps ..... 10-26  
     Reversing Lamps ..... 10-26  
 Buying New Tyres ..... 10-48

**C**

Capacities and  
     Specifications ..... 12-2  
 Carbon Monoxide  
     Boot ..... 2-12  
     Engine Exhaust ..... 9-21  
     Winter Driving ..... 9-8  
 Cargo  
     Tie-Downs ..... 4-3  
 Cautions, Danger, and  
     Warnings ..... iii  
 Chains, Tyre ..... 10-52  
 Charging System Light ..... 5-13  
 Check  
     Engine Light ..... 5-14  
 Child Restraints  
     Infants and Young  
         Children ..... 3-34  
         ISOFIX ..... 3-42  
         Older Children ..... 3-32  
         Securing ..... 3-42, 3-44  
         Systems ..... 3-36  
 Circuit Breakers ..... 10-28  
 Cleaning  
     Exterior Care ..... 10-59  
     Interior Care ..... 10-64

Climate Control Systems  
     Dual Automatic ..... 8-1  
 Clock ..... 5-5  
 Cluster, Instrument ..... 5-8  
 Clutch, Hydraulic ..... 10-10  
 Compartments  
     Storage ..... 4-1  
 Compass  
     Messages ..... 5-31  
 Conformity  
     Declaration of ..... 13-1  
 Control  
     Traction and Electronic  
         Stability ..... 9-31  
 Control of a Vehicle ..... 9-2  
 Convex Mirrors ..... 2-18  
 Coolant  
     Engine ..... 10-12  
     Engine Temperature  
         Gauge ..... 5-11  
     Engine Temperature  
         Warning Light ..... 5-20  
 Cooling System ..... 10-11  
     Engine Messages ..... 5-32  
 Courtesy Lamps ..... 6-8

Cruise Control ..... 9-35  
 Light ..... 5-23  
 Messages ..... 5-31  
 Cruise Control, Active ..... 9-38

**D**

Danger, Warnings, and  
 Cautions ..... iii  
 Daytime Running  
 Lamps (DRL) ..... 6-4  
 Declaration of Conformity ..... 13-1  
 Defensive Driving ..... 9-2  
 Delayed Locking ..... 2-11  
 Dome Lamps ..... 6-8  
 Door  
 Ajar Messages ..... 5-32  
 Delayed Locking ..... 2-11  
 Locks ..... 2-8  
 Power Locks ..... 2-11  
 Rear Seat Pass-Through ..... 3-11  
 Drive Belt Routing, Engine ..... 12-4

Drive Systems  
 All-Wheel Drive ..... 9-27, 10-21  
 Driver Assistance Systems ..... 9-46  
 Driver Information  
 Centre (DIC) ..... 5-24  
 Driver Mode Control ..... 9-34  
 Driving  
 Assistance Systems ..... 9-51  
 Defensive ..... 9-2  
 For Better Fuel Economy ..... 1-17  
 Highway Hypnosis ..... 9-7  
 Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 9-7  
 If the Vehicle is Stuck ..... 9-9  
 Loss of Control ..... 9-4  
 Off-Road Recovery ..... 9-4  
 Vehicle Load Limits ..... 9-10  
 Wet Roads ..... 9-6  
 Winter ..... 9-8  
 Dual Automatic Climate  
 Control System ..... 8-1

**E**

Electrical Equipment,  
 Add-On ..... 9-63  
 Electrical System  
 Engine Compartment  
 Fuse Block ..... 10-28  
 Fuses and Circuit  
 Breakers ..... 10-28  
 Instrument Panel Fuse  
 Block ..... 10-31  
 Overload ..... 10-27  
 Rear Compartment Fuse  
 Block ..... 10-34  
 Engine  
 Air Cleaner/Filter ..... 10-10  
 Check and Service Engine  
 Soon Light ..... 5-14  
 Compartment Overview ..... 10-5  
 Coolant ..... 10-12  
 Coolant Temperature  
 Gauge ..... 5-11  
 Coolant Temperature  
 Warning Light ..... 5-20  
 Cooling System ..... 10-11  
 Cooling System Messages ..... 5-32  
 Drive Belt Routing ..... 12-4

Engine (cont'd)	
Exhaust .....	9-21
Oil Life System .....	10-8
Oil Messages .....	5-33
Overheating .....	10-15
Power Messages .....	5-33
Pressure Light .....	5-21
Running While Parked .....	9-22
Starting .....	9-17
Engine Identification .....	12-1
Entry Lighting .....	6-9
Exit Lighting .....	6-9
Exterior Lamp Controls .....	6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder ...	6-3
Exterior Lighting Battery	
Saver .....	6-9
<b>F</b>	
Features	
Memory .....	1-8
Filter,	
Engine Air Cleaner .....	10-10
Flash-to-Pass .....	6-3
Flat Tyre .....	10-53
Floor Mats .....	10-67

Fluid	
Automatic Transmission .....	10-9
Brakes .....	10-18
Washer .....	10-17
Fog Lamp Light, Rear .....	5-23
Fog Lamps	
Rear .....	6-7
Folding Mirrors .....	2-19
Forward Collision Alert	
(FCA) System .....	9-51
Front Seats	
Heated .....	3-8
Fuel .....	9-60
Additives .....	9-60
Economy Driving .....	1-17
Filling a Portable Fuel	
Container .....	9-62
Filling the Tank .....	9-61
Gauge .....	5-10
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	5-22
Recommended .....	9-60
System Messages .....	5-34

Fuses	
Engine Compartment	
Fuse Block .....	10-28
Fuses and Circuit	
Breakers .....	10-28
Instrument Panel Fuse	
Block .....	10-31
Rear Compartment Fuse	
Block .....	10-34

**G**

Gauges	
Engine Coolant	
Temperature .....	5-11
Fuel .....	5-10
Mileometer .....	5-9
Rev Counter .....	5-10
Speedometer .....	5-9
Trip Odometer .....	5-10
Warning Lights and	
Indicators .....	5-7
General Information	
Service and Maintenance .....	11-1
Towing .....	9-63
Vehicle Care .....	10-2
Glove Box .....	4-2

**H**

Halogen Bulbs ..... 10-25  
 Hazard Lights ..... 6-6  
 Head Restraints ..... 3-2  
 Head-up Display ..... 5-27  
 Headlamp Levelling Control .... 6-5  
 Headlamps  
     Adaptive Forward  
         Lighting (AFL) ..... 6-5  
     Aiming ..... 10-25  
     Automatic ..... 6-4  
     Bulb Replacement ..... 10-25  
     Daytime Running  
         Lamps (DRL) ..... 6-4  
     Flash-to-Pass ..... 6-3  
     High Intensity Discharge  
         (HID) Lighting ..... 10-25  
     Lamps On Reminder ..... 5-23  
     Main-Beam On Light ..... 5-22  
     Main/Dipped Beam Changer ... 6-3  
     Washer ..... 5-4  
 Heated  
     Steering Wheel ..... 5-2  
 Heated Front Seats ..... 3-8  
 Heated Mirrors ..... 2-20  
 High-Speed Operation ..... 10-40

Highway Hypnosis ..... 9-7  
 Hill and Mountain Roads ..... 9-7  
 Hill Start Assist (HSA) ..... 9-31  
 Horn ..... 5-3  
 How to Wear Safety Belts  
     Properly ..... 3-12  
 Hydraulic Clutch ..... 10-10

**I**

Ignition Positions ..... 9-15  
 Immobiliser ..... 2-17  
 Indicator  
     Vehicle Ahead ..... 5-19  
 Infants and Young Children,  
     Restraints ..... 3-34  
 Infotainment ..... 7-1  
 Infotainment System ..... 13-2  
 Instrument Cluster ..... 5-8  
 Instrument Panel  
     Storage Area ..... 4-1  
 Instrument Panel Overview ..... 1-2  
 Interior Rearview Mirrors ..... 2-20  
 Introduction ..... iii  
 ISOFIX Child Restraint  
     Systems ..... 3-42

**J**

Jump Starting ..... 10-53

**K**

Key and Lock Messages ..... 5-34  
 Keyless Entry  
     Remote (RKE) System ..... 2-2  
 Keys ..... 2-1

**L**

Lamps  
     Courtesy ..... 6-8  
     Daytime Running (DRL) ..... 6-4  
     Dome ..... 6-8  
     Exterior Controls ..... 6-1  
     Exterior Lamps Off  
         Reminder ..... 6-3  
     Exterior Lighting Battery  
         Saver ..... 6-9  
     Malfunction Indicator ..... 5-14  
     Messages ..... 5-35  
     Number Plate ..... 10-26

Lamps (cont'd)	
On Reminder .....	5-23
Reading .....	6-8
Rear Fog .....	6-7
Lane Departure	
Warning (LDW) .....	9-57
Lane Departure Warning	
Light .....	5-18
Lap-Shoulder Belt .....	3-13
LED Lighting .....	10-25
Levelling Control	
Headlamp .....	6-5
Light	
Adaptive Forward Lighting	
(AFL) Light .....	5-23
Parking Brake .....	5-17
Lighting	
Adaptive Forward .....	6-5
Entry .....	6-9
Exit .....	6-9
Illumination Control .....	6-7
LED .....	10-25
Lights	
Airbag Readiness .....	5-12
Antilock Brake System	
(ABS) Warning .....	5-18
Brake System Warning .....	5-16

Lights (cont'd)	
Charging System .....	5-13
Cruise Control .....	5-23
Engine Coolant	
Temperature Warning .....	5-20
Engine Oil Pressure .....	5-21
Flash-to-Pass .....	6-3
Fog Lamp, Rear .....	5-23
Lane Departure Warning .....	5-18
Low Fuel Warning .....	5-22
Main-Beam On .....	5-22
Main/Dipped Beam Changer ...	6-3
Seat Belt Reminders .....	5-11
Security .....	5-22
Service Electric Parking	
Brake .....	5-17
StabiliTrak® OFF .....	5-19
Traction Control System	
(TCS)/StabiliTrak® .....	5-20
Traction Off .....	5-19
Tyre Pressure .....	5-21
Lights, Hazard .....	6-6
Limited-Slip Rear Axle .....	9-35
Locking Systems, Anti-theft ...	2-16

Locks	
Delayed Locking .....	2-11
Door .....	2-8
Lockout Protection .....	2-11
Power Door .....	2-11
Safety .....	2-12
Loss of Control .....	9-4
Low Fuel Warning Light .....	5-22
Lumbar Adjustment .....	3-4
Front Seats .....	3-4

## **M**

Main-Beam On Light .....	5-22
Maintenance Schedule	
Recommended Fluids and	
Lubricants .....	11-5
Scheduled Maintenance .....	11-1
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ...	5-14
Manual Gearbox .....	9-26
Fluid .....	10-9
Manual Mode .....	9-24
Memory Features .....	1-8
Memory Seats .....	3-6

Messages

- Airbag System ..... 5-38
- Battery Voltage and Charging ..... 5-30
- Brake System ..... 5-31
- Compass ..... 5-31
- Door Ajar ..... 5-32
- Engine Cooling System ..... 5-32
- Engine Oil ..... 5-33
- Engine Power ..... 5-33
- Fuel System ..... 5-34
- Key and Lock ..... 5-34
- Lamp ..... 5-35
- Object Detection System ..... 5-35
- Ride Control System ..... 5-37
- Security ..... 5-38
- Service Vehicle ..... 5-38
- Starting the Vehicle ..... 5-39
- Transmission ..... 5-40
- Tyre ..... 5-39
- Vehicle ..... 5-30
- Vehicle Reminder ..... 5-40
- Vehicle Speed ..... 5-40
- Washer Fluid ..... 5-41

Mileometer ..... 5-9

Trip ..... 5-10

Mirrors

- Automatic Dimming Rearview ..... 2-20
- Convex ..... 2-18
- Folding ..... 2-19
- Heated ..... 2-20
- Manual Rearview ..... 2-20
- Power ..... 2-19

Mirrors, Interior Rearview ..... 2-20

Mode ..... 9-34

- Driver Control ..... 9-34

Monitor System, Tyre Pressure ..... 10-41

**N**

New Vehicle Run-In ..... 9-14

**O**

Object Detection System Messages ..... 5-35

Off-Road Recovery ..... 9-4

Oil

- Engine ..... 10-6
- Engine Oil Life System ..... 10-8
- Messages ..... 5-33
- Pressure Light ..... 5-21

Older Children, Restraints ..... 3-32

Outlets

- Power ..... 5-5

Overheating, Engine ..... 10-15

**P**

Park

- Shifting Into ..... 9-19
- Shifting Out of ..... 9-20

Parking ..... 9-20

- Brake ..... 9-28, 9-29
- Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check ..... 10-23
- Over Things That Burn ..... 9-21

Parking Brake Light ..... 5-17

Parking or Reversing Assistance Systems ..... 9-47

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator ..... 5-13

Passenger Compartment Air	
Filter .....	8-7
Passenger Sensing System ...	3-26
Pedestrian Protection	
System .....	3-47
Personalisation	
Vehicle .....	5-41
Power	
Door Locks .....	2-11
Mirrors .....	2-19
Outlets .....	5-5
Protection, Battery .....	6-9
Retained Accessory (RAP) ...	9-19
Seat Adjustment .....	3-3
Windows .....	2-21
Pregnancy, Using Safety	
Belts .....	3-17
Privacy	
Radio Frequency	
Identification (RFID) .....	13-2

**R**

Radio Frequency	
Identification (RFID) .....	13-2
Reading Lamps .....	6-8
Rear Axle	
Limited-Slip .....	9-35
Rear Fog Lamp Light .....	5-23
Rear Fog Lamps .....	6-7
Rear Seat	
Pass-Through Door .....	3-11
Rear Seats .....	3-9
Rearview Mirrors .....	2-20
Automatic Dimming .....	2-20
Reclining Seat Backrests .....	3-5
Recommended	
Fuel .....	9-60
Recommended Fluids and	
Lubricants .....	11-5
Recreational Vehicle	
Towing .....	10-57
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)	
System .....	2-2
Remote Vehicle Start .....	2-7
Replacement Bulbs .....	10-27

Replacement Parts	
Airbags .....	3-32
Maintenance .....	11-7
Replacing Airbag System .....	3-32
Replacing Safety Belt	
System Parts after a Crash ...	3-18
Restraints	
Where to Put .....	3-38
Retained Accessory	
Power (RAP) .....	9-19
Rev Counter .....	5-10
Ride Control Systems	
Limited Slip Rear Axle .....	9-35
Messages .....	5-37
Roads	
Driving, Wet .....	9-6
Roof	
Sunroof .....	2-23
Roof Rack System .....	4-3
Rotation, Tyres .....	10-46
Routing, Engine Drive Belt .....	12-4
Run-Flat Tyres .....	10-38
Running the Vehicle While	
Parked .....	9-22
Running-In, New Vehicle .....	9-14

- S**
- Safety Belts ..... 3-11
    - Care ..... 3-18
    - How to Wear Safety Belts
      - Properly ..... 3-12
    - Lap-Shoulder Belt ..... 3-13
    - Replacing after a Crash ..... 3-18
    - Use During Pregnancy ..... 3-17
  - Safety Locks ..... 2-12
  - Safety System Check ..... 3-17
  - Scheduled Maintenance ..... 11-1
  - Seat Belts
    - Reminders ..... 5-11
  - Seats
    - Head Restraints ..... 3-2
    - Heated Front ..... 3-8
    - Lumbar Adjustment, Front ..... 3-4
    - Memory ..... 3-6
    - Power Adjustment, Front ..... 3-3
    - Rear ..... 3-9
    - Reclining Seat Backrests ..... 3-5
  - Seats and Restraints
    - Pedestrian Protection
      - System ..... 3-47
  - Securing Child
    - Restraints ..... 3-42, 3-44
  - Security
    - Light ..... 5-22
    - Messages ..... 5-38
    - Vehicle ..... 2-14
    - Vehicle Alarm ..... 2-14
  - Service ..... 8-7
    - Accessories and
      - Modifications ..... 10-2
    - Doing Your Own Work ..... 10-3
    - Engine Soon Light ..... 5-14
    - Maintenance, General
      - Information ..... 11-1
    - Parts Identification Label ..... 12-1
    - Vehicle Messages ..... 5-38
  - Service Electric Parking
    - Brake Light ..... 5-17
  - Servicing the Airbag ..... 3-30
  - Shift Lock Control Function
    - Check, Automatic
      - Transmission ..... 10-23
  - Shifting
    - Into Park ..... 9-19
    - Out of Park ..... 9-20
  - Side Blind Zone
    - Alert (SBZA) ..... 9-56
  - Signals, Turn and
    - Lane-Change ..... 6-6
  - Specifications and
    - Capacities ..... 12-2
  - Speedometer ..... 5-9
  - StabiliTrak
    - OFF Light ..... 5-19
  - Start Assist, Hills ..... 9-31
  - Start Vehicle, Remote ..... 2-7
  - Starter Switch Check ..... 10-22
  - Starting the Engine ..... 9-17
  - Starting the Vehicle
    - Messages ..... 5-39
  - Steering ..... 9-3
    - Heated Wheel ..... 5-2
    - Wheel Adjustment ..... 5-2
    - Wheel Controls ..... 5-2
  - Storage Areas
    - Armrest ..... 4-2
    - Glove Box ..... 4-2
    - Instrument Panel ..... 4-1
    - Roof Rack System ..... 4-3
  - Storage Compartments ..... 4-1
  - Stuck Vehicle ..... 9-9
  - Sun Visors ..... 2-23
  - Sunroof ..... 2-23

Symbols .....	iv
System	
Active Emergency Braking .....	9-54
Forward Collision	
Alert (FCA) .....	9-51
Infotainment .....	7-1, 13-2
Roof Rack .....	4-3
Systems	
Driver Assistance .....	9-46

## **T**

Theft-Deterrent Systems .....	2-17
Immobiliser .....	2-17
Thigh Support Adjustment .....	3-4
Time .....	5-5
Towing	
General Information .....	9-63
Recreational Vehicle .....	10-57
Vehicle .....	10-56
Track Events and	
Competitive Driving .....	9-5
Traction	
Control System (TCS)/	
StabiliTrak <sup>®</sup> Light .....	5-20
Limited-Slip Rear Axle .....	9-35
Off Light .....	5-19

Traction Control/Electronic	
Stability Control .....	9-31
Transmission	
Automatic .....	9-22
Fluid, Automatic .....	10-9
Fluid, Manual .....	10-9
Messages .....	5-40
Trip Odometer .....	5-10
Turn and Lane-Change	
Signals .....	6-6
Tyres	
Buying New Tyres .....	10-48
Chains .....	10-52
Different Size .....	10-50
If a Tyre Goes Flat .....	10-53
Inflation Monitor System .....	10-42
Inspection .....	10-45
Messages .....	5-39
Pressure .....	10-40
Pressure Light .....	5-21
Pressure Monitor System .....	10-41
Rotation .....	10-46
Run-Flat .....	10-38
Wheel Alignment and	
Tyre Balance .....	10-51

Tyres (cont'd)	
Wheel Replacement .....	10-51
When It Is Time for New	
Tyres .....	10-48
Winter .....	10-37

## **U**

Using This Manual .....	iii
-------------------------	-----

## **V**

Vehicle	
Alarm System .....	2-14
Control .....	9-2
Identification	
Number (VIN) .....	12-1
Load Limits .....	9-10
Messages .....	5-30
Personalisation .....	5-41
Reminder Messages .....	5-40
Remote Start .....	2-7
Security .....	2-14
Speed Messages .....	5-40
Towing .....	10-56
Vehicle Ahead Indicator .....	5-19

Vehicle Care  
 Tyre Pressure ..... 10-39  
 Ventilation, Air ..... 8-6  
 Visors ..... 2-23

**W**

Warning  
 Brake System Light ..... 5-16  
 Lane Departure (LDW) ..... 9-57  
 Warning Lights, Gauges, and  
 Indicators ..... 5-7  
 Warnings ..... iii  
 Cautions and Danger ..... iii  
 Hazard Lights ..... 6-6  
 Washer Fluid ..... 10-17  
 Messages ..... 5-41  
 Washer, Headlamps ..... 5-4  
 Wheels  
 Alignment and Tyre  
 Balance ..... 10-51  
 Different Size ..... 10-50  
 Replacement ..... 10-51  
 When It Is Time for New  
 Tyres ..... 10-48  
 Where to Put the Restraint .... 3-38

Windows ..... 2-20  
 Power ..... 2-21  
 Windscreen  
 Replacement ..... 10-24  
 Wiper/Washer ..... 5-3  
 Winter  
 Driving ..... 9-8  
 Winter Tyres ..... 10-37  
 Wiper Blade Replacement .... 10-24

